



1 Timothy

translationNotes

v6

Copyrights & Licensing

License:

This work is made available under a [Creative Commons Attribution-ShareAlike 4.0 International License](#), which means

You are free:

- Share — copy and redistribute the material in any medium or format
- Adapt — remix, transform, and build upon the material for any purpose, even commercially.

Under the following conditions:

- Attribution — You must attribute the work as follows: “Original work available at <http://unfoldingword.org>.” Attribution statements in derivative works should not in any way suggest that we endorse you or your use of this work.
- ShareAlike — If you remix, transform, or build upon the material, you must distribute your contributions under the same license as the original.

Use of trademarks: **unfoldingWord** is a trademark of Distant Shores Media and may not be included on any derivative works created from this content. Unaltered content from <http://unfoldingword.org> must include the **unfoldingWord** logo when distributed to others. But if you alter the content in any way, you must remove the **unfoldingWord** logo before distributing your work.

This work is still being revised, if you have comments or questions please email them to help@door43.org

Version: 6

Published: 2017-02-22

Table of Contents

Copyrights & Licensing	1
translationNotes	8
Introduction to 1 Timothy	8
1 Timothy 1 General Notes	16
1 Timothy 1:1-2	17
1 Timothy 1:3-4	19
1 Timothy 1:5-8	21
1 Timothy 1:9-11	23
1 Timothy 1:12-14	25
1 Timothy 1:15-17	27
1 Timothy 1:18-20	29
1 Timothy 2 General Notes	31
1 Timothy 2:1-4	32
1 Timothy 2:5-7	34
1 Timothy 2:8-10	36
1 Timothy 2:11-12	38
1 Timothy 2:13-15	39
1 Timothy 3 General Notes	41
1 Timothy 3:1-3	42
1 Timothy 3:4-5	44
1 Timothy 3:6-7	45
1 Timothy 3:8-10	47
1 Timothy 3:11-13	49
1 Timothy 3:14-15	51
1 Timothy 3:16	53
1 Timothy 4 General Notes	55
1 Timothy 4:1-2	56
1 Timothy 4:3-5	58
1 Timothy 4:6-8	60
1 Timothy 4:9-10	62
1 Timothy 4:11-13	63
1 Timothy 4:14-16	64
1 Timothy 5 General Notes	66
1 Timothy 5:1-2	67
1 Timothy 5:3-4	68
1 Timothy 5:5-6	69
1 Timothy 5:7-8	70
1 Timothy 5:9-10	71
1 Timothy 5:11-13	73
1 Timothy 5:14-16	75
1 Timothy 5:17-18	77

Table of Contents

1 Timothy 5:19-20	79
1 Timothy 5:21-22	80
1 Timothy 5:23-25	82
1 Timothy 6 General Notes	84
1 Timothy 6:1-2	85
1 Timothy 6:3-5	87
1 Timothy 6:6-8	89
1 Timothy 6:9-10	90
1 Timothy 6:11-12	92
1 Timothy 6:13-14	94
1 Timothy 6:15-16	96
1 Timothy 6:17-19	98
1 Timothy 6:20-21	100
translationQuestions	101
1 Timothy 1	101
1 Timothy 2	103
1 Timothy 3	105
1 Timothy 4	107
1 Timothy 5	109
1 Timothy 6	111
translationWords	113
accuse, accusation, accuser	113
Adam	114
adversary, enemy	115
afflict, affliction	116
age	117
amen, truly	118
angel, archangel	119
apostle, apostleship	121
authority	122
believe, believe in, belief	123
believer	124
blameless	126
blasphemy, blaspheme, blasphemous	127
bles, blessed, blessing	128
brother	130
call, calling, called, call out	131
Christ, Messiah	133
church, Church	135
command, to command, commandment	137
condemn, condemnation	138
confidence, confident	139
conscience	140

deacon	141
death, die, dead	142
deceive, deceit, deception, deceptive	144
declare, declaration	145
demon, evil spirit, unclean spirit	146
disciple	147
discipline, self-discipline	149
disgrace, disgraceful	150
doctrine	151
elder	152
endure, endurance	153
envy, covet	154
Ephesus	155
everlasting, eternal, eternity	156
Eve	157
evil, wicked, wickedness	158
exhort, exhortation	160
faith	161
faithful, faithfulness	163
false witness, corrupt witness, false testimony, false report	164
favor, favorable, favoritism	165
fear, afraid, fear of Yahweh	166
flesh	167
fool, foolish, folly	168
forever	169
sexual immorality	170
foundation, founded	171
Gentile	172
gift	173
glory, glorious	174
God	175
godly, godliness	177
God the Father, heavenly Father, Father	178
gold	180
good, goodness	181
good news, gospel	183
gossip	185
grace, gracious	186
grain	187
guilt, guilty	188
heart	189
holy, holiness	190
Holy Spirit, Spirit of God, Spirit of the Lord	191

Table of Contents

honor, to honor	193
hope	194
house	195
household	196
house of God, Yahweh's house	197
hypocrite, hypocrisy	198
in Christ, in Jesus, in the Lord, in him	199
instruct, instruction	200
intercede, intercession	201
Jesus, Jesus Christ, Christ Jesus	202
judge, judgment	204
justify, justification	206
king	207
know, knowledge, make known	208
labor, laborer	209
last day, last days, latter days	210
lawful, lawfully, unlawful	211
lawless, lawlessness	212
law, law of Moses, God's law, law of Yahweh	213
life, live, living, alive	215
lord, master, sir	217
Lord	218
love	219
Macedonia	221
manager, steward	222
mediator	223
mercy, merciful	224
mind	226
name	227
nation	228
obey, obedient, obedience	229
overseer	230
ox, oxen	231
patient, patience	232
Paul, Saul	233
peace, peaceful	235
perfect	236
persecute, persecution	237
Pilate	238
pillar, column	239
power, powers	240
pray, prayer	241
preach	242

proclaim, proclamation	243
profane	244
prophet, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess	245
proud, pride, prideful	247
pure, purify, purification	248
ransom	249
rebel, rebellious, rebellion	250
receive	251
reign	252
reject	253
reproach	254
reveal, revelation	255
righteous, righteousness	256
ruin, ruins	257
ruler, rulers, rule	258
sanctify, sanctification	259
Satan, devil, evil one	260
save, safe	262
Savior	264
self-control	265
servant, slave, slavery	266
serve, service	268
sin, sinful, sinner, sinning	269
slander, slanderer	271
snare, trap	272
son, son of	273
spirit, spiritual	275
teach, teaching, teacher, taught	277
teacher, Teacher	278
tempt, temptation	279
testimony, testify	280
Timothy	281
transgress, transgression	282
true, truth, come true	283
trust, trustworthy, trustworthiness	285
turn, turn away, turn back	286
unbeliever, unbelief	287
ungodly, godless, ungodliness, godlessness	288
wine, wineskin, new wine	289
witness, eyewitness	290
word	292
word of God, word of Yahweh, word of the Lord, scripture	293
works, deeds, work, acts	295

Table of Contents

world, worldly	296
worthy, worth, unworthy, worthless	297
yoke	298
translationAcademy	299
Abstract Nouns	299
Active or Passive	302
Distinguishing versus Informing or Reminding	305
Doublet	307
Ellipsis	309
Euphemism	311
Exclusive “We”	313
Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information	315
When Masculine Words Include Women	317
Generic Noun Phrases	319
Hendiadys	321
Hyperbole	323
Idiom	326
Inclusive “We”	328
Litotes	330
Merism	332
Metaphor	334
Metonymy	339
Nominal Adjectives	341
Parallelism	343
Personification	345
Rhetorical Question	347
Simile	350
Synecdoche	353
Forms of You	355
Translating Son and Father	356
How to Translate Names	358
Numbers	362
Textual Variants	365
Translate Unknowns	368
Poetry	371

translationNotes

Introduction to 1 Timothy

Part 1: General Introduction

Outline of the Book of 1 Timothy

1. Greetings (1:1,2)
2. Paul and Timothy
 - a) Warning about false teaching (1:3-11)
 - b) Paul thankful for what Christ had done in his ministry (1:12-17)
 - c) He calls Timothy to fight in this spiritual battle (1:18-20)
3. Prayer for all (2:1-8)
4. Roles and responsibilities in the church (2:9-6:2)
5. Warnings
 - a) Second warning about false teachers (cp. 1:3-11 and 6:3-5)
 - b) Money (6:6-10)
6. Description of a man of God (6:11-16)
7. Note to the wealthy (6:17-19)
8. Closing admonition to Timothy and blessing (6:20,21)

What is the Book of 1 Timothy about?

Paul, an older servant of God, gives his younger colleague, Timothy, various instructions in this letter. The topics he addresses include church worship, qualifications for church leaders, and warnings against false teachers. This letter shows how Paul was training Timothy to be a leader among the churches.

How should the title of this book be translated?

Translators may choose to call this book by its traditional title, “1 Timothy” or “First Timothy.” Or they may choose a clearer title, such as “Paul’s First Letter to Timothy.” (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Who wrote the Book of 1 Timothy?

This book is the first letter Paul wrote to his disciple and close friend Timothy, probably near the end of his life.

Part 2: Important Religious and Cultural Concepts

What is discipleship?

The term disciple refers to a person who spends time with a teacher, learning from that teacher's character and teaching. Discipleship is the process of making disciples of Christ. This letter gives many instructions about how a leader should train a less mature Christian. The goal of discipleship is to encourage other Christians to grow in likeness to Christ. (See: [disciple](#))

Part 3: Important Translation Issues

Singular and plural "you"

In this book, the word "I" refers to Paul. Also, the word "you" is almost always singular and refers to Timothy. The exception to this is 6:21. (See: [Exclusive "We"](#) and [Forms of You](#))

What does Paul mean by the expression "in Christ," "in the Lord," etc.?

Paul means to express the idea of very close union with Christ and the believers. Please see the introduction to the Book of Romans for more details about this kind of expression.

What are the major textual issues in the text of the Book of 1 Timothy?

The following are the most significant textual issues in the Book of 1 Timothy:

- "Withdraw from such things." (6:5) Some older versions have this reading, but the ULB, UDB, and most other modern versions do not. The best ancient copies do not have this phrase.

(See: [Textual Variants](#))

List of translationAcademy Topics in 1 Timothy

- * [Abstract Nouns](#) is found in: [06:06](#)
- * [Active or Passive](#) is found in: [01:09](#), [01:15](#), [01:18](#), [02:01](#), [02:05](#), [02:13](#), [03:08](#), [03:16](#), [04:03](#), [04:14](#), [05:09](#), [05:17](#), [05:23](#), [06:01](#), [06:11](#), [06:20](#)
- * [Distinguishing versus Informing or Reminding](#) is found in: [03:14](#)
- * [Doublet](#) is found in: [02:01](#), [02:08](#), [04:09](#), [05:05](#), [05:21](#)
- * [Ellipsis](#) is found in: [01:03](#), [02:13](#), [03:01](#), [04:09](#), [05:01](#)
- * [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#) is found in: [01:03](#), [02:05](#), [03:11](#), [04:03](#), [05:23](#), [06:01](#), [06:13](#), [06:15](#)
- * [When Masculine Words Include Women](#) is found in: [01:09](#), [04:06](#)
- * [Generic Noun Phrases](#) is found in: [06:03](#)

- * **Hendiadys** is found in: 02:05, 04:03
- * **Hyperbole** is found in: 01:03
- * **Idiom** is found in: 01:05, 06:03
- * **Inclusive “We”** is found in: 01:01, 05:14
- * **Merism** is found in: 05:05
- * **Metaphor** is found in: 01:01, 01:05, 01:12, 01:18, 02:01, 03:06, 03:08, 03:14, 04:01, 04:06, 04:14, 05:14, 05:17, 05:19, 05:21, 05:23, 06:01, 06:03, 06:09, 06:11, 06:17, 06:20
- * **Metonymy** is found in: 01:01, 01:05, 02:08, 03:16, 04:03, 05:09, 06:01, 06:11
- * **Nominal Adjectives** is found in: 05:09, 06:17
- * **Personification** is found in: 05:17, 05:23
- * **Rhetorical Question** is found in: 03:04
- * **Simile** is found in: 05:01
- * **Forms of You** is found in: 01:03, 05:01, 06:11, 06:20
- * **Translating Son and Father** is found in: 01:01
- * **How to Translate Names** is found in: 01:18
- * **Numbers** is found in: 05:09
- * **Translate Unknowns** is found in: 02:08, 05:17
- * **Poetry** is found in: 03:16

List of translationWords in 1 Timothy

- * **accuse, accusation, accuser** is found in: 05:14, 05:19
- * **Adam** is found in: 02:13
- * **adversary, enemy** is found in: 05:14
- * **afflict, affliction** is found in: 05:09
- * **age** is found in: 01:15
- * **amen, truly** is found in: 01:15, 06:15
- * **angel, archangel** is found in: 03:16, 05:21
- * **apostle, apostleship** is found in: 01:01, 02:05
- * **authority** is found in: 02:01, 02:11
- * **believe, believe in, belief** is found in: 03:16, 04:03, 04:09, 05:14, 06:01
- * **believer** is found in: 05:09
- * **blameless** is found in: 03:08

- * blasphemy, blaspheme, blasphemous is found in: 01:12, 01:18, 06:01
- * bless, blessed, blessing is found in: 01:09, 06:15
- * brother is found in: 06:01
- * call, calling, called, call out is found in: 06:11
- * church, Church is found in: 03:04, 03:14, 05:14
- * command, to command, commandment is found in: 01:01, 01:03, 01:05, 05:21, 06:13
- * condemn, condemnation is found in: 03:06
- * confidence, confident is found in: 01:01, 03:11, 04:09, 05:05
- * conscience is found in: 01:05, 01:18, 03:08, 04:01
- * deacon is found in: 03:08, 03:11
- * death, die, dead is found in: 05:05
- * deceive, deceit, deception, deceptive is found in: 02:13, 04:01
- * declare, declaration is found in: 06:01
- * demon, evil spirit, unclean spirit is found in: 04:01
- * disgrace, disgraceful is found in: 03:06
- * doctrine is found in: 01:03
- * elder is found in: 04:14, 05:17, 05:19
- * endure, endurance is found in: 06:11
- * envy, covet is found in: 06:03
- * Ephesus is found in: 01:03
- * everlasting, eternal, eternity is found in: 01:15, 06:11, 06:15
- * Eve is found in: 02:13
- * evil, wicked, wickedness is found in: 05:14, 06:03, 06:09
- * exhort, exhortation is found in: 04:11, 05:01
- * faith is found in: 01:01, 01:03, 01:05, 01:12, 01:18, 02:13, 03:08, 03:11, 04:01, 04:06, 04:11, 05:07, 06:09, 06:11, 06:20
- * faithful, faithfulness is found in: 01:12, 03:11, 06:03, 06:11
- * false witness, corrupt witness, false testimony, false report is found in: 01:09
- * favor, favorable, favoritism is found in: 05:21
- * fear, afraid, fear of Yahweh is found in: 05:19
- * flesh is found in: 03:16
- * fool, foolish, folly is found in: 06:09

- * forever is found in: 01:15
- * sexual immorality is found in: 01:09
- * foundation, founded is found in: 06:17
- * Gentile is found in: 02:05
- * gift is found in: 04:14
- * glory, glorious is found in: 01:15, 03:16
- * God is found in: 02:01, 02:05, 03:14, 04:03, 04:09, 05:03, 05:05, 05:21, 06:01, 06:13, 06:17
- * godly, godliness is found in: 02:01, 02:08, 03:16, 04:06, 06:03, 06:06, 06:11
- * God the Father, heavenly Father, Father is found in: 01:01
- * gold is found in: 02:08
- * good, goodness is found in: 01:05, 03:01, 05:09, 05:23, 06:11, 06:17
- * good news, gospel is found in: 01:09
- * gossip is found in: 05:11
- * grace, gracious is found in: 01:01, 01:12, 06:20
- * grain is found in: 05:17
- * guilt, guilty is found in: 05:11
- * heart is found in: 01:05
- * holy, holiness is found in: 02:08
- * Holy Spirit, Spirit of God, Spirit of the Lord is found in: 03:16, 04:01
- * honor, to honor is found in: 01:15, 05:03, 05:17, 06:01, 06:15
- * hope is found in: 06:17
- * house is found in: 05:14
- * household is found in: 03:04, 03:11, 05:03, 05:07
- * house of God, Yahweh's house is found in: 03:14
- * hypocrite, hypocrisy is found in: 04:01
- * in Christ, in Jesus, in the Lord, in him is found in: 01:12
- * instruct, instruction is found in: 06:03
- * intercede, intercession is found in: 02:01
- * Jesus, Jesus Christ, Christ Jesus is found in: 01:01, 01:12, 02:05, 03:11, 04:06, 05:21, 06:03, 06:13
- * judge, judgment is found in: 05:23
- * justify, justification is found in: 03:16

- * king is found in: 01:15, 02:01, 06:15
- * know, knowledge, make known is found in: 02:01
- * labor, laborer is found in: 05:17
- * lawful, lawfully, unlawful is found in: 01:05
- * lawless, lawlessness is found in: 01:09
- * law, law of Moses, God's law, law of Yahweh is found in: 01:05, 01:09
- * life, live, living, alive is found in: 01:15, 04:06, 05:05, 06:17
- * lord, master, sir is found in: 06:01
- * Lord is found in: 01:01, 01:12, 06:03, 06:13, 06:15
- * love is found in: 01:05, 01:12, 02:13, 04:11, 06:11
- * Macedonia is found in: 01:03
- * manager, steward is found in: 03:04
- * mediator is found in: 02:05
- * mercy, merciful is found in: 01:01, 01:12, 01:15
- * mind is found in: 06:03
- * name is found in: 06:01
- * nation is found in: 03:16
- * obey, obedient, obedience is found in: 03:04
- * overseer is found in: 03:01
- * ox, oxen is found in: 05:17
- * patient, patience is found in: 01:15
- * Paul, Saul is found in: 01:01
- * peace, peaceful is found in: 01:01, 02:01, 03:01
- * perfect is found in: 06:13
- * persecute, persecution is found in: 01:12
- * Pilate is found in: 06:13
- * pillar, column is found in: 03:14
- * power, powers is found in: 06:15
- * pray, prayer is found in: 02:01, 02:08, 04:03, 05:05
- * preach is found in: 05:07
- * proclaim, proclamation is found in: 03:16, 04:11, 06:20

- * profane is found in: 01:09
- * prophet, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess is found in: 01:18, 04:14
- * proud, pride, prideful is found in: 03:06, 06:03, 06:17
- * pure, purify, purification is found in: 01:05, 04:11, 05:01, 05:21
- * ransom is found in: 02:05
- * rebel, rebellious, rebellion is found in: 01:09
- * receive is found in: 01:12
- * reign is found in: 06:15
- * reject is found in: 01:18, 04:03, 04:06
- * reproach is found in: 03:01, 05:07, 06:13
- * reveal, revelation is found in: 03:08, 03:16
- * righteous, righteousness is found in: 06:11
- * ruin, ruins is found in: 06:09
- * ruler, rulers, rule is found in: 05:17, 06:15
- * sanctify, sanctification is found in: 02:13, 04:03
- * Satan, devil, evil one is found in: 01:18, 03:06, 05:14
- * save, safe is found in: 01:15, 02:01, 04:14
- * Savior is found in: 01:01, 02:01, 04:09
- * self-control is found in: 02:08
- * servant, slave, slavery is found in: 01:09, 04:06, 06:01
- * serve, service is found in: 03:08, 03:11, 06:01
- * sin, sinful, sinner, sinning is found in: 01:09, 01:15, 05:19, 05:21, 05:23
- * slander, slanderer is found in: 03:11
- * snare, trap is found in: 03:06, 06:09
- * son, son of is found in: 01:01
- * teach, teaching, teacher, taught is found in: 01:03, 03:01, 04:01, 04:11, 05:17
- * teacher, Teacher is found in: 01:05, 02:05
- * tempt, temptation is found in: 06:09
- * testimony, testify is found in: 02:05
- * Timothy is found in: 01:01, 01:18, 06:20
- * transgress, transgression is found in: 02:13

- * true, truth, come true is found in: 01:01, 02:01, 02:05, 03:08, 03:14, 03:16, 04:03, 06:03, 06:13, 06:17
- * trust, trustworthy, trustworthiness is found in: 01:15, 03:01, 04:09
- * turn, turn away, turn back is found in: 01:05, 05:14, 06:03
- * unbeliever, unbelief is found in: 01:12, 05:07
- * ungodly, godless, ungodliness, godlessness is found in: 01:09
- * wine, wineskin, new wine is found in: 03:01, 03:08, 05:23
- * witness, eyewitness is found in: 05:19, 06:11
- * word is found in: 04:06, 05:17, 06:03
- * word of God, word of Yahweh, word of the Lord, scripture is found in: 04:03, 05:17
- * works, deeds, work, acts is found in: 02:08, 05:09, 05:23, 06:17
- * world, worldly is found in: 04:06
- * worthy, worth, unworthy, worthless is found in: 01:15, 05:17, 06:01
- * yoke is found in: 06:01

1 Timothy 1 General Notes

Special concepts in this chapter

Spiritual children

Paul calls Timothy his “son.” Paul was very involved in discipling Timothy in his faith. Therefore, he called him his “spiritual” son. (See: [disciple](#), [faith](#), [spirit](#), [spiritual](#) and [Metaphor](#))

Genealogies

This is probably a reference to some group’s speculation over the identification of the Messiah. (See: [Christ](#), [Messiah](#))

Important figures of speech in this chapter

Play-on-words

The phrase “the law is good if one uses it lawfully” is a pun or play-on-words. Law and lawfully both sound the same.

Links:

- [1 Timothy 01:01 Notes](#)
- [Introduction to 1 Timothy](#)

1 Timothy 1:1-2

UDB:

1-2 I, Paul, am writing this to Timothy. God our Savior and Christ Jesus are those in whom we have confidence for the future, and Christ commanded me to be an apostle. You became a Christian when I told you about Jesus Christ, and you are my true son in the Lord. May God the Father and Christ Jesus our Lord be kind to you, have mercy upon you, and give you peace.

ULB:

1 ¹ Paul, an apostle of Christ Jesus according to the commandment of God our Savior and Christ Jesus our confidence, ² to Timothy, a true son in the faith: Grace, mercy, and peace from God the Father and Christ Jesus our Lord.

translationWords:

- Paul, Saul
- apostle, apostleship
- Jesus, Jesus Christ, Christ Jesus
- command, to command, commandment
- Savior
- confidence, confident
- Timothy
- true, truth, come true
- son, son of
- faith
- grace, gracious
- mercy, merciful
- peace, peaceful
- God the Father, heavenly Father, Father
- Lord

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - In this book, unless otherwise noted, the word “our” refers to Paul and Timothy (the one to whom this letter is written), as well as to all believers. (See: **Inclusive “We”**)
- **Paul** - “I, Paul, wrote this letter.” Your language may have a particular way of introducing the author of a letter. You may want to tell in this same verse to whom the letter is written (UDB).

- **according to the commandment of** - “by the command of” or “by the authority of”
- **God our Savior** - “God who saves us”
- **Christ Jesus our confidence** - Here “our confidence” refers to the person in whom we have confidence. AT: “Christ Jesus, who is the one in whom we have confidence” and “Christ Jesus, in whom we trust” (See: [Metonymy](#))
- **true son in the faith** - Paul speaks of his close relationship to Timothy as though they were father and son. Paul thinks of Timothy as a son because Paul taught Timothy to have faith in Jesus. AT: “who is truly like a son to me” (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **Grace, mercy, and peace** - “May grace, mercy, and peace be yours,” or “May you experience kindness, mercy, and peace”
- **God the Father** - “God, who is our Father.” Here “Father” is an important title for God. (See: [Translating Son and Father](#))
- **Christ Jesus our Lord** - “Christ Jesus, who is our Lord”

Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Timothy](#)
- [1 Timothy 01 General Notes](#)
- [1 Timothy 1 Translation Questions](#)

1 Timothy 1:3-4

UDB:

³ The reason that I urged you to remain in Ephesus while I traveled to Macedonia was so that you would command certain men not to teach what is different from what we teach. ⁴ And command them not to give their time and attention to old useless stories and lists of ancestors that people never stop thinking about. These things only cause people to argue with each other, but do not help them to know God's plan to save us—a plan that we believe by faith.

ULB:

³ As I urged you to do when I was leaving for Macedonia, remain in Ephesus so that you can command certain people not to teach a different doctrine. ⁴ Neither should they pay attention to stories and endless genealogies. These cause arguments rather than helping the plan of God, which is by faith.

translationWords:

- Macedonia
- Ephesus
- command, to command, commandment
- teach, teaching, teacher, taught
- doctrine
- faith

translationNotes:

- **Connecting Statement:** - Paul encourages Timothy to reject the wrong use of the law and use good teaching from God.
- **General Information:** - The word “you” in this letter is singular and refers to Timothy. (See: [Forms of You](#))
- **As I urged you** - “As I pleaded with you” or “As I asked you very strongly”
- **remain in Ephesus** - “wait for me there in the city of Ephesus”
- **a different doctrine** - The implied information can be stated explicitly. AT: “a different doctrine from what we teach” (UDB) (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))
- **Neither should they pay attention** - The understood information can be stated clearly. AT: “And I also want you to command them not to pay attention” (See: [Ellipsis](#))
- **to stories** - These may have been stories about their ancestors.
- **endless genealogies** - Paul uses “endless” to emphasize that the genealogies are very long. (See: [Hyperbole](#))

- **genealogies** - “lists of ancestors.” A genealogy is the written or verbal record of a person’s parents and ancestors. These were very important in Israel, as they established which tribe one was included in the people of Israel.
- **These cause arguments** - “These make people angrily disagree.” The people debated about stories and genealogies about which no one could know the truth for certain.
- **rather than helping the plan of God, which is by faith** - Possible meanings are 1) “rather than helping us to understand God’s plan to save us, which we learn by faith” or 2) “rather than helping us to do God’s work, which we do by faith.”

Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Timothy](#)
- [1 Timothy 01 General Notes](#)
- [1 Timothy 1 Translation Questions](#)

1 Timothy 1:5-8

UDB:

⁵ Instead, the purpose of what we command you to teach is to love God from a pure heart, from a good conscience, and from faith that is sincere. ⁶ Some men have stopped trying to do these good things; instead, they are now saying useless things. ⁷ They want to teach about the law, but they do not understand it. Yet they insist that what they teach is true.

⁸ But we know that law is good if we know how to use it according to what the law says.

ULB:

⁵ Now the goal of the commandment is love from a pure heart, from a good conscience, and from a sincere faith. ⁶ Some people have missed the mark and have turned away from these things to foolish talk. ⁷ They want to be teachers of the law, but they do not understand what they say or what they insist on. ⁸ But we know that the law is good if one uses it lawfully.

translationWords:

- command, to command, commandment
- love
- pure, purify, purification
- heart
- good, goodness
- conscience
- faith
- turn, turn away, turn back
- teacher, Teacher
- law, law of Moses, God's law, law of Yahweh
- lawful, lawfully, unlawful

translationNotes:

- **Now** - This word is used here to mark a break in the main teaching. Here Paul explains the purpose of what he is commanding Timothy.
- **the commandment** - Here this does not mean the Old Testament or the Ten Commandments but rather the instructions that Paul gives in [1:3-4](#).
- **is love** - Possible meanings are 1) "is to love God" (UDB) or 2) "is to love people."
- **from a pure heart** - Here "pure" means the person does not have hidden motives to do wrong. Here "heart" refers to a person's mind and thoughts. AT: "from a mind that is honest" (See: [Metonymy](#))
- **good conscience** - "a conscience that chooses right instead wrong"

- **sincere faith** - “genuine faith” or “a faith without hypocrisy”
- **Some people have missed the mark** - Paul speaks of faith in Christ as if it were a target at which to aim. Paul means that some people are not fulfilling the purpose of their faith, which is to love as he just explained in 1:5. (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **and have turned away from these things** - Here “turned away” is an idiom that means they have stopped doing what God has commanded. (See: [Idiom](#))
- **teachers of the law** - Here “law” refers to the law of Moses.
- **but they do not understand** - “even though they do not understand” or “and yet they do not understand”
- **what they insist on** - “what they confidently state is true”
- **we know that the law is good** - “we understand that the law is useful” or “we understand that the law is beneficial”
- **if one uses it lawfully** - “if we use it correctly” or “if we use it the way God intended”

Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Timothy](#)
- [1 Timothy 01 General Notes](#)
- [1 Timothy 1 Translation Questions](#)

1 Timothy 1:9-11

UDB:

⁹ We know that the law is not made to control good people, but to control rebellious people and those who do not honor God, for sinners, and disrespectful persons, for murderers and for those who even murder their own parents. ¹⁰ It is made also to control homosexuals and all people who practice improper sexual behavior, to control those who steal others and sell them as slaves, to control liars and false witnesses in courts of law, and to stop whatever is different from our good and healthy teaching. ¹¹ All of this agrees with the wonderful good news that God, whom we praise, has taught us, and that he trusts me to announce to others.

ULB:

⁹ And we know this, that law is not made for a righteous man, but for a lawless and rebellious people, for ungodly people and sinners, and for those who are godless and profane. It is made for those who kill their fathers and mothers, for murderers, ¹⁰ for sexually immoral people, for homosexuals, for those who kidnap people for slaves, for liars, for false witnesses, and for whatever else is against faithful instruction. ¹¹ This instruction is according to the glorious gospel of the blessed God with which I have been entrusted.

translationWords:

- law, law of Moses, God's law, law of Yahweh
- lawless, lawlessness
- rebel, rebellious, rebellion
- ungodly, godless, ungodliness, godlessness
- sin, sinful, sinner, sinning
- profane
- sexual immorality
- servant, slave, slavery
- false witness, corrupt witness, false testimony, false report
- good news, gospel
- bless, blessed, blessing

translationNotes:

- **And we know this** - "Because we realize this" or "We also know this"
- **that law is not made for a righteous man** - This can be stated in active form. AT: "that Moses did not give the law for the righteous man" (See: [Active or Passive](#))
- **a righteous man** - Here "man" includes both male and female. AT: "a righteous person" or "a good person" (See: [When Masculine Words Include Women](#))

- **It is made** - This can be stated in active form. AT: “Moses gave the law” (See: [Active or Passive](#))
- **sexually immoral people** - This refers to anyone who sleeps with someone to whom they are not married.
- **homosexuals** - “men who sleep with other men”
- **those who kidnap people for slaves** - “those who kidnap people to sell as slaves” or “those who take people to sell as slaves”
- **for whatever else is against faithful instruction** - “for those who do anything else that is against true Christian teaching”
- **the glorious gospel of the blessed God** - “the gospel about the glory that belongs to the blessed God” or “the gospel of the glorious and blessed God”
- **with which I have been entrusted** - This can be stated in active form. AT: “which God has given me and made me responsible for” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Timothy](#)
- [1 Timothy 01 General Notes](#)
- [1 Timothy 1 Translation Questions](#)

1 Timothy 1:12-14

UDB:

¹² I thank Christ Jesus our Lord, because he gave me the strength to serve him. He also relies on me to serve him. ¹³ In past times, I insulted and persecuted the believers. I did violent deeds, but God had mercy on me because I did not believe, and I did not know what I was doing. ¹⁴ God was extremely kind to me, for he made me able to believe in Christ Jesus and love him because he united me to him.

ULB:

¹² I thank Christ Jesus our Lord. He strengthened me, for he considered me faithful, and he placed me into service. ¹³ I was a blasphemer, a persecutor, and a violent man. But I received mercy because I acted ignorantly in unbelief. ¹⁴ But the grace of our Lord overflowed with faith and love that is in Christ Jesus.

translationWords:

- Jesus, Jesus Christ, Christ Jesus
- Lord
- faithful, faithfulness
- blasphemy, blaspheme, blasphemous
- persecute, persecution
- receive
- mercy, merciful
- unbeliever, unbelief
- grace, gracious
- faith
- love
- in Christ, in Jesus, in the Lord, in him

translationNotes:

- **Connecting Statement:** - Paul tells how he acted in the past and encourages Timothy to trust God.
- **I thank** - “I am grateful to” or “I am thankful to”
- **he considered me faithful** - “he considered me trustworthy” or “he regarded me as reliable”
- **he placed me into service** - Paul speaks of the task of serving God as if it were a place that one could be placed in. AT: “he has assigned me to serve him” or “he has appointed me as his servant” (See: [Metaphor](#))

- **I was a blasphemer** - “I spoke evil against Christ.” Paul is referring to the time before he was a Christian.
- **a persecutor** - “I persecuted those who believed in Christ”
- **violent man** - “I was cruel towards other people.” This is a person who believes he has the right to hurt others.
- **But I received mercy because I acted ignorantly in unbelief** - “But because I did not believe in Jesus, and I did not know what I was doing, I received mercy from Jesus”
- **I received mercy** - “Jesus showed me mercy” or “Jesus had mercy on me”
- **But the grace** - “And the grace”
- **the grace of our Lord overflowed** - Paul speaks of God’s grace as if it were a liquid that could fill a container and spill out of the top when the container is full. AT: “God showed me much grace” (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **with faith and love** - This is the result of God showing much grace to Paul. AT: “which caused me to trust in Jesus and love him”
- **that is in Christ Jesus** - This speaks about Jesus as if he were a container that holds a liquid. Here “in Christ Jesus” refers to having a relationship with Jesus. AT: “that Christ Jesus enables me to give to God because I am united to him” (See: [Metaphor](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Timothy](#)
- [1 Timothy 01 General Notes](#)
- [1 Timothy 1 Translation Questions](#)

1 Timothy 1:15-17

UDB:

¹⁵ Everyone should accept this fact, because we can count on it completely: Jesus Christ came into the world to save sinners. It is true that I am the worst sinner of all. ¹⁶ But because I am the worst sinner, God had mercy on me before many others, so that they would see how patient he is. God is patiently waiting to give everlasting life to those people who will believe in him.

¹⁷ The eternal king cannot be seen, and he cannot die. He alone is God. It is he whom everyone will honor and praise forever and ever. Amen.

ULB:

¹⁵ This message is reliable and worthy of all acceptance, that Christ Jesus came into the world to save sinners. I am the worst of these. ¹⁶ But for this reason I was given mercy, so that in me, the foremost, Christ Jesus might demonstrate all patience. He did this as an example for those who would trust in him for eternal life. ¹⁷ Now to the king of the ages, the immortal, invisible, the only God, be honor and glory forever and ever. Amen.

translationWords:

- worthy, worth, unworthy, worthless
- save, safe
- sin, sinful, sinner, sinning
- mercy, merciful
- patient, patience
- trust, trustworthy, trustworthiness
- everlasting, eternal, eternity
- life, live, living, alive
- king
- age
- honor, to honor
- glory, glorious
- forever
- amen, truly

translationNotes:

- **This message is reliable** - “This statement is true”
- **worthy of all acceptance** - “we should receive it without any doubt” or “deserves for us to accept it with full confidence”

- **I was given mercy** - This can be stated in active form. AT: “God showed me mercy” or “I obtained mercy from God” (See: [Active or Passive](#))
- **so that in me, the foremost** - “so that through me, the worst sinner”
- **Now ... Amen** - The word “Now” is used here to mark a break in the main teaching. Here Paul praises God.
- **the king of the ages** - “the eternal king” or “the chief ruler forever”
- **be honor and glory** - “may he be honored and given glory” or “may people honor and give glory to you”

Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Timothy](#)
- [1 Timothy 01 General Notes](#)
- [1 Timothy 1 Translation Questions](#)

1 Timothy 1:18-20

UDB:

¹⁸ Timothy, my child, I command you: remember what certain believers prophesied about you. Do this in order to follow those things as you work hard for the Lord. ¹⁹ Trust God and keep a good conscience. Some people have not paid attention to their own consciences. So what has happened to their faith is a disaster. ²⁰ Hymenaeus and Alexander are two men like this. I have handed them over to Satan for him to attack them, so that they may learn not to insult God.

ULB:

¹⁸ I am placing this command before you, Timothy, my child. I am doing this in accordance with the prophecies previously made about you, so that you might engage in the good fight. ¹⁹ Do this so that you may have faith and a good conscience. Some people have rejected these and have been shipwrecked in respect to the faith. ²⁰ Such are Hymenaeus and Alexander, whom I gave over to Satan so that they may be taught not to blaspheme.

translationWords:

- Timothy
- prophet, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess
- faith
- conscience
- reject
- Satan, devil, evil one
- blasphemy, blaspheme, blasphemous

translationNotes:

- **I am placing this command before you** - Paul speaks of his instructions as if he could physically put them in front of Timothy. AT: “I am entrusting you with this command” or “This is what I am commanding you” (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **my child** - Paul speaks of his close relationship to Timothy as though Paul is the father and Timothy is the child. Paul thinks of Timothy as a his child because Paul taught Timothy to have faith in Jesus. AT: “who is truly like my child” (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **in accordance with the prophecies previously made about you** - This can be stated in active form. AT: “in agreement with what other believers prophesied about you” (See: [Active or Passive](#))
- **engage in the good fight** - Paul speaks about Timothy working for the Lord as if he were a soldier fighting a battle. AT: “continue to work hard for the Lord” (See: [Metaphor](#))

- **a good conscience** - “a conscience that chooses right instead wrong.” See how you translated this in [1:5](#).
- **have been shipwrecked in respect to the faith** - This can be stated in active form. AT: “they have shipwrecked their faith” (See: [Active or Passive](#))
- **have been shipwrecked in respect to the faith** - Paul speaks of these people’s faith as if it were a ship that could be wrecked at sea. He means that they have ruined their faith and no longer believe in Jesus. You should use this or a similar metaphor if it will be understood in the project language. (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **Hymenaeus and Alexander** - These are names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))
- **whom I gave over to Satan** - Paul speaks as if he physically handed these men to Satan. This probably means that Paul rejected them from the community of believers. Since they are no longer a part of the community, Satan can have power of them and harm them. (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **they may be taught** - This can be stated in active form. AT: “that God may teach them” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Timothy](#)
- [1 Timothy 01 General Notes](#)
- [1 Timothy 1 Translation Questions](#)

1 Timothy 2 General Notes

Special concepts in this chapter

Peace

Paul encourages the Christians to live peaceful live by exercising discipline and self-control. (See: [discipline, self-discipline](#))

Women in the church

Paul is probably instructing the women how to use their freedom in Christ in such a way that it does not upset the normal cultural standards for women. Because of the potential for controversy, extra care should be taken in translating these passages.

Other possible translation difficulties in this chapter

“Prayers, intercessions, and thanksgivings”

There is some overlap in meaning to these terms. It is not necessary to view these as perfectly distinct categories.

Links:

- [1 Timothy 02:01 Notes](#)

1 Timothy 2:1-4

UDB:

¹ Most importantly, because false teachers are dangerous, I urge all the believers to ask God and pray to him to help all people, and to thank him for them. ² Pray for kings and for everyone who has power over others, so that we may live quietly and peacefully in a way that we can honor God and other people. ³ God, who saves us, listens to us when we pray like this. He sees it as good. ⁴ He wants to save everyone. He wants everyone to learn what is true about him.

ULB:

² ¹ Therefore first of all, I urge that requests, prayers, intercessions, and thanksgivings be made for all people, ² for kings and all who are in authority, in order that we may live a peaceful and quiet life in all godliness and dignity. ³ This is good and acceptable before God our savior. ⁴ He desires all people to be saved and to come to the knowledge of the truth.

translationWords:

- pray, prayer
- intercede, intercession
- king
- authority
- peace, peaceful
- godly, godliness
- God
- Savior
- save, safe
- know, knowledge, make known
- true, truth, come true

translationNotes:

- **Connecting Statement:** - Paul encourages Timothy to pray for all people.
- **first of all** - “most important” or “before anything else”
- **I urge that requests, prayers, intercessions, and thanksgivings be made** - This can be stated in active form. AT: “I urge all believers to make requests, prayers, intercessions, and thanksgiving to God” (See: **Active or Passive**)
- **I urge** - “I plead” or “I ask”
- **a peaceful and quiet life** - Here “peaceful” and “quiet” mean the same thing. Paul wants all believers to be able to live calm lives without trouble from the authorities. (See: **Doublet**)
- **in all godliness and dignity** - “that honors God and that other people will respect”

- **He desires all people to be saved and to come to the knowledge of the truth** - This can be stated in active form. AT: “God desires to save all people and for them to come to the knowledge of the truth” (See: [Active or Passive](#))
- **to come to the knowledge of the truth** - Paul speaks of learning the truth about God as if it were a place to which people could be brought. AT: “to know and accept what is true” (See: [Metaphor](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Timothy](#)
- [1 Timothy 02 General Notes](#)
- [1 Timothy 2 Translation Questions](#)

1 Timothy 2:5-7

UDB:

⁵ The truth is this, that there is one God, and there is only one person who can make us acceptable to him. Christ Jesus, the man, is this one person. ⁶ Of his own free will he died in order set all people free. God made this happen at the time he chose. It shows that he wants to save everyone. ⁷ To declare this truth, God made me a messenger and an apostle. I speak the truth; I am not lying. I teach the Gentiles the things that they should truly believe.

ULB:

⁵ For there is one God, and there is one mediator for God and man, the man Christ Jesus. ⁶ He gave himself as a ransom for all, as the testimony at the right time. ⁷ For this purpose, I, myself, was made a herald and an apostle. I am telling the truth. I am not lying. I am a teacher of the Gentiles in faith and truth.

translationWords:

- God
- mediator
- Jesus, Jesus Christ, Christ Jesus
- ransom
- testimony, testify
- apostle, apostleship
- true, truth, come true
- teacher, Teacher
- Gentile

translationNotes:

- **one mediator for God and man** - A mediator is a person who helps negotiate a peaceful settlement between two parties who disagree with each other. Here Jesus helps sinners enter into a peaceful relationship with God.
- **gave himself** - “died willingly”
- **as a ransom** - “as a price of freedom” or “as a payment to obtain freedom”
- **as the testimony at the right time** - It can be made explicit that this was the testimony that God wants to save all people. AT: “as the proof at the right time that God wants to save all people” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))
- **at the right time** - This means that this was the time that God had chosen.
- **For this purpose** - “For this” or “For this reason”

- **I, myself, was made a herald and an apostle** - This can be stated in active form. AT: “Christ made me, Paul, a preacher and an apostle” (See: [Active or Passive](#))
- **I am a teacher of the Gentiles in faith and truth** - “I teach the Gentiles the message of faith and truth.” Here, Paul may be using “faith” and “truth” to express one idea. AT: “I teach the Gentile about the true faith” (See: [Hendiadys](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Timothy](#)
- [1 Timothy 02 General Notes](#)
- [1 Timothy 2 Translation Questions](#)

1 Timothy 2:8-10

UDB:

⁸ Therefore, I want men everywhere to pray and to lift up their hands to God in a way that he will accept. Believers should not pray to show anger or doubt about God. ⁹ I also want the women to dress themselves carefully. They should control themselves so that they do not dress to show themselves off to others. Instead of braided hair, gold, pearls, or expensive clothing, ¹⁰ women should dress themselves in what is right for women who do good works and who say that they honor God.

ULB:

⁸ Therefore, I want men in every place to pray and to lift up holy hands without anger or arguing. ⁹ Likewise, I want the women to dress themselves in proper clothing, with modesty and self-control. They should not have braided hair, or gold, or pearls, or expensive clothing. ¹⁰ I want them to dress with what is appropriate for women who profess godliness through good works.

translationWords:

- pray, prayer
- holy, holiness
- self-control
- gold
- godly, godliness
- works, deeds, work, acts

translationNotes:

- **Connecting Statement:** - Paul finishes his instructions on prayer then gives some special instructions for women.
- **I want men in every place to pray and to lift up holy hands** - Here “holy hands” means the entire person is holy. AT: “I want men in every place who are holy to lift up their hands and pray” (See: [Metonymy](#))
- **men in every place** - “the males in all places” or “the males everywhere.” Here the word “men” refers specifically to males.
- **lift up holy hands** - It was a normal posture for people to raise their hands while praying.
- **with modesty and self-control** - Both of these words mean basically the same thing. Paul is emphasizing that women should wear clothes that are appropriate and do not attract improper attention from men. (See: [Doublet](#))

- **They should not have braided hair** - During Paul's time, many Roman women braided their hair to make themselves attractive. Braiding is only one way a woman can give undue attention to her hair. If braided hair is unknown, it can be stated in a more general way. AT: "They should not have fancy hairstyles" or "They should not have elaborate hairstyle that attract attention" (See: [Metonymy](#))
- **pearls** - These are beautiful and valuable white balls that people use as jewelry. They are formed inside the shell of a certain kind of small animal that lives in the ocean. (See: [Translate Unknowns](#))
- **who profess godliness through good works** - "who want to honor God by the good things they do"

Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Timothy](#)
- [1 Timothy 02 General Notes](#)
- [1 Timothy 2 Translation Questions](#)

1 Timothy 2:11-12

UDB:

¹¹ When men are teaching the believers, women should listen in silence and not ask questions about what they hear. ¹² I do not allow women to teach or to tell men what to do. Women who honor God keep quiet when the believers come to learn.

ULB:

¹¹ A woman should learn in silence and in all compliance. ¹² I do not permit a woman to teach or to exercise authority over a man, but to live in quietness.

translationWords:

- [authority](#)

translationNotes:

- **in silence** - “in quietness”
- **and in all compliance** - “and not ask questions about what they hear” (UDB) or “ready to obey everything God commands”
- **I do not permit a woman** - “I do not allow a woman”

Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Timothy](#)
- [1 Timothy 02 General Notes](#)
- [1 Timothy 2 Translation Questions](#)

1 Timothy 2:13-15

UDB:

¹³ For Adam was formed first, then Eve after him. ¹⁴ And it was not Adam that the snake deceived. It was the woman whom he completely deceived, so that she sinned. ¹⁵ But God will keep women safe as they bear and raise children, if they continue to believe in God, love him, live in a way that pleases him, and are wise in how they think.

ULB:

¹³ For Adam was formed first, then Eve. ¹⁴ And Adam was not deceived, but the woman was completely deceived in transgression. ¹⁵ However, she will be saved through bearing children, if they continue in faith and love and sanctification with soundness of mind.

translationWords:

- Adam
- Eve
- transgress, transgression
- deceive, deceit, deception, deceptive
- faith
- love
- sanctify, sanctification

translationNotes:

- **Adam was formed first** - This can be stated in active form. AT: “Adam is the one God formed first” or “God created Adam first” (See: [Active or Passive](#))
- **then Eve** - The understood information can be stated clearly. AT: “then God formed Eve” or “then God created Eve” (See: [Ellipsis](#))
- **And Adam was not deceived** - This can be stated in active form. AT: “And Adam was not the one whom the serpent deceived” (See: [Active or Passive](#))
- **but the woman was completely deceived in transgression** - This can be stated in active form. AT: “but it was the woman who disobeyed because the serpent completely deceived her” (See: [Active or Passive](#))
- **she will be saved through bearing children** - Here “she” refers to women in general. Possible meanings are 1) God will keep women physically safe as they give birth to children, or 2) God will save women from their sins through their role as child bearers.
- **she will be saved** - This can be stated in active form. AT: “God will save her” or “God will save women” (See: [Active or Passive](#))
- **if they continue** - “if they remain” or “if they continue living.” Here “they” refers to women.

- **in faith and love and sanctification** - “in trusting Jesus and loving others and living a holy life”
- **with soundness of mind** - “with self-control” or “with awareness of what is best”

Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Timothy](#)
- [1 Timothy 02 General Notes](#)
- [1 Timothy 2 Translation Questions](#)

1 Timothy 3 General Notes

Structure and formatting

3:16 was probably a song, poem, or creed the early church used to list important doctrines believers all shared.

Special concepts in this chapter

Overseer and Deacons

There is some disagreement over the different titles used for church leaders. Some titles include; overseer, elder, pastor, and bishop.

Other possible translation difficulties in this chapter

Character qualities

The description given of a potential overseer all concern the quality of a person's character. (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

Links:

- [1 Timothy 03:01 Notes](#)

1 Timothy 3:1-3

UDB:

¹ You should rely on what I tell you here: If someone desires very much to oversee believers, he wants to do something really excellent. ² For that reason, however, an overseer must be someone whom no one accuses of anything bad. He must have only one wife. He must not do anything to excess; he must think in wise ways. He must behave well, and he must welcome strangers. He must be able to teach others. ³ He must not be an alcoholic and not quick to fight. Instead, he must be patient and peaceful with others. And he should not be greedy for money.

ULB:

3 ¹ This saying is trustworthy: If someone desires to be an overseer, he desires a good work. ² Therefore the overseer must be without reproach. He must be a husband of one wife. He must be moderate, sensible, orderly, hospitable. He must be able to teach. ³ He must not be addicted to wine, not a brawler, but instead, gentle, peaceful. He must not be a lover of money.

translationWords:

- trust, trustworthy, trustworthiness
- overseer
- good, goodness
- reproach
- teach, teaching, teacher, taught
- wine, wineskin, new wine
- peace, peaceful

translationNotes:

- **Connecting Statement:** - Paul gives some special instructions on how the overseers of the church should act and be.
- **a good work** - “an honorable task”
- **husband of one wife** - An overseer must have only one wife. It is unclear if this excludes men who have been previously widowed or divorced, or never married.
- **He must be moderate** - “He must not do anything to excess” (UDB)
- **sensible** - “reasonable.” This can be stated as a complete sentence. “He must think in wise ways” (UDB) (See: [Ellipsis](#))
- **orderly** - “dignified.” This can be stated as a complete sentence. AT: “He must behave well” (UDB) (See: [Ellipsis](#))
- **hospitable** - “friendly to strangers.” This can be stated as a complete sentence. AT: “He must welcome strangers” (UDB) (See: [Ellipsis](#))

- **He must not be addicted to wine** - “He must not be a drunkard” or “He must not drink too much wine”
- **not a brawler** - This can be stated as a complete sentence. AT: “He must not be someone who likes to fight and argue” (See: [Ellipsis](#))
- **but instead, gentle, peaceful** - This can be stated as a complete sentence. AT: “But instead he must be gentle and peaceful” (See: [Ellipsis](#))
- **a lover of money** - “greedy for money” (UDB)

Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Timothy](#)
- [1 Timothy 03 General Notes](#)
- [1 Timothy 3 Translation Questions](#)

1 Timothy 3:4-5

UDB:

⁴ He should control the people in his own home well. His children should obey him with respect.

⁵ I say this because if a man does not even know how to control the people in his own house, how can he care for an assembly of God's people?

ULB:

⁴ He should manage his own household well, and his children should obey him with all respect. ⁵ For if a man does not know how to manage his own household, how will he care for a church of God?

translationWords:

- [manager, steward](#)
- [household](#)
- [obey, obedient, obedience](#)
- [church, Church](#)

translationNotes:

- **He should manage** - "He should lead" or "He should take care of"
- **with all respect** - Possible meanings are 1) the overseer's children should obey and show respect to their father (UDB) or 2) the overseer's children should show respect to everyone or 3) the overseer should show respect to those in his household as he leads them.
- **all respect** - "complete respect" or "respect at all times"
- **For if a man does not know how to manage** - "Because if a man does not know how to manage" or "For when a man cannot manage"
- **how will he care for a church of God** - Paul uses a question to teach Timothy. AT: "he cannot take care of a church of God" or "he will not be able to lead a church of God" (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))
- **a church of God** - Here "church" refers to the people. AT: "the people of God" or "the believers over whom he is in charge"

Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Timothy](#)
- [1 Timothy 03 General Notes](#)
- [1 Timothy 3 Translation Questions](#)

1 Timothy 3:6-7

UDB:

⁶ A new believer should not be an overseer, because he might think that he is better than other people. If that happened, God might punish him like he punished the devil. ⁷ Those outside of the church must also think well of him. Otherwise he might be shamed and the devil might persuade him to sin.

ULB:

⁶ He should not be a new convert, so that he does not swell with pride and might fall into condemnation as the devil. ⁷ He must also have a good reputation with those outside, so that he does not fall into disgrace and the trap of the devil.

translationWords:

- proud, pride, prideful
- condemn, condemnation
- Satan, devil, evil one
- disgrace, disgraceful
- snare, trap

translationNotes:

- **He should not be a new convert** - “He should not be a new believer” or “He must be a mature believer”
- **fall into condemnation as the devil** - Paul speaks of the experience of being condemned for having done wrong as if it were a hole that a person could fall into. AT: “have God condemn him as he condemned the devil” (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **those outside** - “those outside of the church.” Paul speaks of the church as though it were a place, and of unbelievers as though they were physically outside of it. AT: “those who are not Christians” (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **he does not fall into disgrace** - Paul speaks of disgrace as if though it were a hole that a person could fall into. Here “fall into” means to experience. AT: “nothing causes him shame before the unbelievers” (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **and the trap of the devil** - Paul speaks about the devil causing someone to sin as if he were a hunter catching an animal in a trap. AT: “and so that the devil does not cause him to sin” (See: [Metaphor](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Timothy](#)
- [1 Timothy 03 General Notes](#)
- [1 Timothy 3 Translation Questions](#)

1 Timothy 3:8-10

UDB:

⁸ Deacons, in the same way, should be people whom others respect. They should be sincere when they speak. They should not drink too much wine, and they must not be greedy for money. ⁹ They should believe in the true things that God has told us, and at the same time know what is right, and then do it. ¹⁰ Find these qualities in them first, and then choose them to serve because no one can find anything wrong with them.

ULB:

⁸ Deacons, likewise, should be dignified, not double-talkers. They should not drink too much wine or be greedy. ⁹ They should keep the revealed truth of the faith with a clean conscience. ¹⁰ They should also be approved first, then they should serve because they are blameless.

translationWords:

- deacon
- wine, wineskin, new wine
- reveal, revelation
- true, truth, come true
- faith
- conscience
- serve, service
- blameless

translationNotes:

- **Connecting Statement:** - Paul gives some special instructions on how the deacons of the church and their wives should act and be.
- **Deacons, likewise** - “Deacons, like overseers”
- **should be dignified** - “should act properly” or “should be worthy of respect”
- **not double-talkers** - Paul speaks about these people as if they could say two things at once. He means the person says one thing but mean something else. AT: “not insincere” or “and they must mean what they say” (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **They should keep the revealed truth of the faith** - “They must continue to believe the true message God revealed to us and that we believe.” This refers to a truth that had existed for some time but that God was showing to them at that moment. Paul speaks of true teaching about God as if it were an object that a person could keep with himself. (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **the revealed truth** - This can be stated in active form. AT: “the truth that God revealed” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

- **with a clean conscience** - Paul speaks of a person's knowledge that he has done no wrong as if that knowledge or conscience were clean. AT: "knowing they have tried their hardest to do what is right" (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **They should also be approved first** - This can be stated in active form. AT: "Other believers should approve of them first" or "They should prove themselves first" (See: [Active or Passive](#))
- **be approved** - This means other believers should evaluate those who want to be a deacon and determine if they are fit to serve in the church.

Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Timothy](#)
- [1 Timothy 03 General Notes](#)
- [1 Timothy 3 Translation Questions](#)

1 Timothy 3:11-13

UDB:

¹¹ In the same way, other people should respect deacons' wives. Their wives should not talk badly about other people. They must not do anything to excess, and they must be honest in everything they do. ¹² A deacon must have only one wife and must control his children and his possessions well. ¹³ Good deacons are men whom the other believers highly respect. They come to trust in Christ Jesus very much.

ULB:

¹¹ Women in the same way should be dignified. They should not be slanderers. They should be moderate and faithful in all things. ¹² Deacons must be husbands of one wife. They must manage well their children and household. ¹³ For those who have served well acquire for themselves a good standing and great confidence in the faith that is in Christ Jesus.

translationWords:

- slander, slanderer
- faithful, faithfulness
- deacon
- household
- serve, service
- confidence, confident
- faith
- Jesus, Jesus Christ, Christ Jesus

translationNotes:

- **Women in the same way** - Possible meanings are 1) “women” refers to the wives of deacons or 2) “women” refers to female deacons.
- **be dignified** - “act properly” or “be worthy of respect”
- **They should not be slanderers** - “they must not speak evil about other people”
- **moderate** - “not do anything to excess.” See how you translated this in [3:2](#).
- **husbands of one wife** - A man must have only one wife. It is unclear if this excludes men who have been previously widowed, divorced, or never married. See how you translated this in [3:2](#).
- **manage well their children and household** - “properly take care of and lead their children and others who live in their homes”
- **For those** - “For those deacons” or “For these church leaders”
- **acquire for themselves** - “receive for themselves” or “gain for themselves”

- **a good standing** - The implied meaning may be stated explicitly. AT: “a good reputation among other believers” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))
- **and great confidence in the faith that is in Christ Jesus** - Possible meanings are 1) they will trust in Jesus with even more confidence or 2) they will speak confidently to other people about their faith in Jesus.

Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Timothy](#)
- [1 Timothy 03 General Notes](#)
- [1 Timothy 3 Translation Questions](#)

1 Timothy 3:14-15

UDB:

¹⁴ As I write to you these things, I hope to come to you soon. ¹⁵ But if I do not come soon, I am writing to you now so that you may know how to act in the family of God, which is the group of those who believe in God, who gives life to all things. It is these who teach the truth and witness that it is true.

ULB:

¹⁴ I am writing these things to you, and I hope to come to you soon. ¹⁵ But if I delay, I am writing so that you may know how to behave in the household of God, which is the church of the living God, the pillar and support of the truth.

translationWords:

- house of God, Yahweh's house
- church, Church
- God
- pillar, column
- true, truth, come true

translationNotes:

- **Connecting Statement:** - Paul tells Timothy the reason he wrote to him and then describes Christ's godliness.
- **and I hope to come to you soon** - "although I hope to visit you very soon"
- **But if I delay** - "But in case I cannot go there soon" or "But if something prevents me from being there soon"
- **in the household of God** - Paul speaks of the group of believers as if they were a family. AT: "as members of God's family" or "among the people of God" (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **which is the church** - This phrase gives us information about "the household of God" rather than making a distinction between a household of God which is the church and one that is not the church. This can be stated as a new sentence. AT: "Those who belong to the family of God are the community who believes in the living God" (See: [Distinguishing versus Informing or Reminding](#))
- **the living God** - Here this expression may be speaking of God as the one who gives life to all, as in the UDB.
- **pillar and support of the truth** - Paul speaks of the believers bearing witness to the truth about Christ as if they were a pillar and a base supporting a building. This can be stated as a

new sentence. AT: “And, by keeping and teaching God’s truth, these members of the church support the truth just as a pillar and base support a building” (See: [Metaphor](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Timothy](#)
- [1 Timothy 03 General Notes](#)
- [1 Timothy 3 Translation Questions](#)

1 Timothy 3:16

UDB:

¹⁶ And we say together that the truth that God has revealed to us is very great, and we honor him for it:

”Christ was God revealed in a human body.
The Holy Spirit proved that he was genuine.
Angels saw him.
Believers announced him among the nations.
People in many parts of the world believed in him.
God took him up to himself and gave him his power.”

ULB:

¹⁶ And it is undeniable that the revealed truth of godliness is great:

”He appeared in the flesh,
was justified by the Spirit,
was seen by angels,
was proclaimed among nations,
was believed on in the world,
and was taken up in glory.”

translationWords:

- reveal, revelation
- true, truth, come true
- godly, godliness
- flesh
- justify, justification
- Holy Spirit, Spirit of God, Spirit of the Lord
- angel, archangel
- proclaim, proclamation
- nation
- believe, believe in, belief
- glory, glorious

translationNotes:

- **And it is undeniable** - “And no one can deny”
- **that the revealed truth of godliness is great** - This can be stated in active form. AT: “that the truth which God revealed is great” (See: [Active or Passive](#))
- **He appeared ... up in glory** - This is most likely a song or poem that Paul is quoting. If your language has a way of indicating that this is poetry you could use it here. If not, you could translate this as regular prose rather than poetry. (See: [Poetry](#))
- **He appeared** - Here “He” is ambiguous. It could refer to “God” or to “Christ.” It may be best to translate this as “He.” If you must be more specific you could translate it as “Christ who is God” or “Christ.”
- **in the flesh** - Paul uses “flesh” here to mean a human being. AT: “as a true human being” (See: [Metonymy](#))
- **was justified by the Spirit** - This can be stated in active form. AT: “the Holy Spirit confirmed that he was who he said he was” (See: [Active or Passive](#))
- **was seen by angels** - This can be stated in active form. AT: “the angels saw him” (See: [Active or Passive](#))
- **was proclaimed among nations** - This can be stated in active form. AT: “people in many nations told others about him” (See: [Active or Passive](#))
- **was believed on in the world** - This can be stated in active form. AT: “people in many parts of the world believed in him” (See: [Active or Passive](#))
- **and was taken up in glory** - This can be stated in active form. AT: “and God the Father took him up to heaven in glory” (See: [Active or Passive](#))
- **in glory** - This means he received power from God the Father and he is worthy of honor.

Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Timothy](#)
- [1 Timothy 03 General Notes](#)
- [1 Timothy 3 Translation Questions](#)

1 Timothy 4 General Notes

Structure and formatting

4:1-3 is a prophecy. (See: [prophet](#), [prophecy](#), [prophesy](#), [seer](#), [prophetess](#)).

Other possible translation difficulties in this chapter

Later times

This is another way of referring to the last days. (See: [last day](#), [last days](#), [latter days](#)).

Links:

- [1 Timothy 04:01 Notes](#)

1 Timothy 4:1-2

UDB:

¹ Now the Spirit clearly says that in later times, some people will stop believing the truth about Christ and pay attention to spirits who deceive believers and demons who teach false things. ² These people will say one thing but do any evil thing they wish, as if a hot iron had burned and ruined their minds.

ULB:

4 ¹ Now the Spirit clearly says that in later times some people will leave the faith and pay attention to deceitful spirits and the teachings of demons ² in lying hypocrisy. Their own consciences will be branded.

translationWords:

- Holy Spirit, Spirit of God, Spirit of the Lord
- faith
- deceive, deceit, deception, deceptive
- demon, evil spirit, unclean spirit
- teach, teaching, teacher, taught
- hypocrite, hypocrisy
- conscience

translationNotes:

- **Connecting Statement:** - Paul tells Timothy what the Spirit says will happen and encourages him in what he should teach.
- **Now** - This word is used here to mark a break in the main teaching. Here Paul starts to tell a new part of the teaching.
- **in later times** - Possible meanings are 1) this refers to a time after Paul dies or 2) this is at a latter time in Paul's own life.
- **leave the faith** - Paul speaks of people ceasing to trust in Christ as if they were physically leaving a place or an object. AT: "stop trusting in Jesus" (See: **Metaphor**)
- **and pay attention** - "and give attention" or "because they are paying attention"
- **deceitful spirits and the teachings of demons** - "spirits who trick people and the things that demons teach"
- **in lying hypocrisy** - "These people will be hypocrites and speak lies"
- **Their own consciences will be branded** - Possible meanings are 1) Paul is speaking of people who can no longer tell that they are doing wrong as if their minds are ruined like skin that

someone has burnt with a hot iron or 2) Paul is speaking of these people as if Satan had put a mark on these people with a hot iron to indicate that they belong to him. (See: [Metaphor](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Timothy](#)
- [1 Timothy 04 General Notes](#)
- [1 Timothy 4 Translation Questions](#)

1 Timothy 4:3-5

UDB:

³ They will try to stop believers from marrying. They will tell them not to eat certain things, even though God has created them, so that believers who have come to know the truth can share them with each other while thanking God for them. ⁴ I say this because everything that God has made is good. We reject nothing that we receive from God while thanking him for it. ⁵ For by praying to God and by believing his word we set it apart for him.

ULB:

³ They will forbid to marry and to receive foods that God created for sharing with thanksgiving among those who believe and who know the truth. ⁴ For everything created by God is good. Nothing that we take with thanksgiving is to be rejected. ⁵ For it is sanctified by the word of God and prayer.

translationWords:

- God
- believe, believe in, belief
- true, truth, come true
- reject
- sanctify, sanctification
- word of God, word of Yahweh, word of the Lord, scripture
- pray, prayer

translationNotes:

- **They will** - “These people will”
- **forbid to marry** - It is implied that they will forbid believers to marry. AT: “forbid believers to marry” or “prevent believers from marrying” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))
- **and to receive foods** - It is implied that they will forbid only certain foods. AT: “and they will require believers to abstain from certain foods” or “and they will not allow people to eat certain foods” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))
- **everything created by God is good** - This can be stated in active form. AT: “everything that God has created is good” (See: [Active or Passive](#))
- **Nothing that we take with thanksgiving is to be rejected** - This can be stated in active form. AT: “We should not refuse anything for which we give thanks to God” or “Everything that we eat with thanksgiving is acceptable” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

- **it is sanctified by the word of God and prayer** - Here “word of God” and “prayer” are used together to express one idea. The prayer is in agreement with the truth that God has revealed. AT: “it is dedicated for God’s use by praying in agreement with his word” (See: [Hendiadys](#))
- **it is sanctified** - This can be stated in active form. AT: “we sanctify it” or “we have set it apart” (See: [Active or Passive](#))
- **word of God** - Here “word” refers to God’s message or what he has revealed. (See: [Metonymy](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Timothy](#)
- [1 Timothy 04 General Notes](#)
- [1 Timothy 4 Translation Questions](#)

1 Timothy 4:6-8

UDB:

⁶ If you keep speaking this truth to the brothers and sisters, you will be a good servant of Jesus Christ. You will serve him well, because the message that we believe is strengthening you, as the good things God has taught you and that you have followed. ⁷ But do not listen to the things that mean nothing and to the stories that only old women tell. Instead, train yourself to honor God. ⁸ Physical exercise helps only a little, but if you honor God, this will help you with everything as you live now on earth and as you live in the future with God.

ULB:

⁶ If you place these things before the brothers, you will be a good servant of Jesus Christ. For you are being nourished by the words of faith and by the good teaching that you have followed. ⁷ But reject worldly stories loved by old women. Instead, train yourself in godliness. ⁸ For bodily training is a little useful, but godliness is useful for all things. It holds promise for this life now and the life to come.

translationWords:

- servant, slave, slavery
- Jesus, Jesus Christ, Christ Jesus
- word
- faith
- reject
- world, worldly
- godly, godliness
- life, live, living, alive

translationNotes:

- **If you place these things before the brothers** - Paul speaks of his instructions as if they were objects that could be physically presented to the believers. Here, to place before means to instruct or to remind. AT: “If you help the believers remember these things” (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **these things** - This refers to the teaching that started in [3:16](#).
- **the brothers** - This refers to all believers whether male or female. (See: [When Masculine Words Include Women](#))
- **you are being nourished by the words of faith and by the good teaching that you have followed** - Paul speaks of God’s word and its’ teaching as if it could physically feed Timothy and make him strong. This can be stated in active form. AT: “the words of faith and the good teaching that you have followed are causing you to trust more strongly in Christ” (See: [Metaphor](#) and [Active or Passive](#))

- **words of faith** - “words that cause people to believe”
- **worldly stories loved by old women** - “profane stories and old wives’ tales.” The word for “stories” is the same as for “myths” in [1:4](#), so you should translate it the same here.
- **loved by old women** - This is probably an expression that means “silly” or “absurd.” Paul is not purposely insulting women in his reference to “old women.” Instead, he and his audience knew that men die younger than women, so there are more women than men whose minds have become feeble due to old age. (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **train yourself in godliness** - “train yourself to honor God” or “train yourself to act in ways that please God”
- **bodily training** - “physical exercise”
- **holds promise for this life** - “is beneficial to this life” or “helps to make this life better”

Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Timothy](#)
- [1 Timothy 04 General Notes](#)
- [1 Timothy 4 Translation Questions](#)

1 Timothy 4:9-10

UDB:

⁹ What I have just written is something that you can rely on. It is worth believing completely. ¹⁰ For this reason we work very hard, as hard as we can, because our hope is in God who lives, the savior of all humanity, but especially the savior of those who believe.

ULB:

⁹ This message is trustworthy and worthy of full acceptance. ¹⁰ For it is for this that we struggle and work very hard. For we have confidence in the living God, who is the Savior of all people, but especially of believers.

translationWords:

- [trust, trustworthy, trustworthiness](#)
- [confidence, confident](#)
- [God](#)
- [Savior](#)
- [believe, believe in, belief](#)

translationNotes:

- **worthy of full acceptance** - “worthy of your complete belief” or “worthy of your full trust”
- **For it is for this** - “This is the reason”
- **struggle and work very hard** - The words “struggle” and “work very hard” mean basically the same thing. Paul uses them together to emphasize the intensity with which they serve God. (See: [Doublet](#) and [Metaphor](#))
- **we have confidence in the living God** - Here “living God” probably means, “God, who makes all things live.”
- **but especially of believers** - The understood information can be stated clearly. AT: “but he is especially the Savior of those people who believe” (See: [Ellipsis](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Timothy](#)
- [1 Timothy 04 General Notes](#)
- [1 Timothy 4 Translation Questions](#)

1 Timothy 4:11-13

UDB:

¹¹ Declare and teach these things to the believers.

¹² Do not allow anyone to say that you are useless because you are young. Instead, show other believers how to live. Show them this by how you speak, by how you live, by how you love, by how you trust God, and by how you keep from committing evil deeds. ¹³ Until I come to you, see to it that you read God's word to the believers in public, and that you explain and teach it to the believers.

ULB:

¹¹ Proclaim and teach these things. ¹² Let no one despise your youth. Instead, be an example for those who believe, in speech, conduct, love, faithfulness, and purity. ¹³ Until I come, attend to the reading, to the exhortation, and to the teaching.

translationWords:

- [proclaim, proclamation](#)
- [teach, teaching, teacher, taught](#)
- [love](#)
- [faith](#)
- [pure, purify, purification](#)
- [exhort, exhortation](#)

translationNotes:

- **Proclaim and teach these things** - "Command and teach these things" or "Command and teach these things I just mentioned"
- **Let no one despise your youth** - "Do not let anyone consider you less important because you are young"
- **attend to the reading, to the exhortation, and to the teaching** - "continue reading, explaining, and teaching the scriptures to believers"

Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Timothy](#)
- [1 Timothy 04 General Notes](#)
- [1 Timothy 4 Translation Questions](#)

1 Timothy 4:14-16

UDB:

¹⁴ Be sure to use the gift that is in you, what God gave to you when the elders laid hands on you and spoke God's messages to you. ¹⁵ Be sure to do all these things and live according to them. In this way, all the believers will see that you are doing them better and better.

¹⁶ Control yourself very carefully and do everything that we teach. Keep doing these things. If you do so, you will save yourself and the people who listen to you.

ULB:

¹⁴ Do not neglect the gift that is in you, which was given to you through prophecy, with the laying on of the hands of the elders. ¹⁵ Care for these things. Be in them, so that your progress may be evident to all people. ¹⁶ Give careful attention to yourself and to the teaching. Continue in these things. For by doing so, you will save yourself and those who listen to you.

translationWords:

- gift
- prophet, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess
- elder
- save, safe

translationNotes:

- **Do not neglect the gift that is in you** - Paul speaks of Timothy as if he were a container that could hold God's gifts. This can be stated in positive form. AT: "Do not neglect your spiritual gift" (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **Do not neglect** - This can be stated in positive form. AT: "Be sure to use" (See: [Active or Passive](#))
- **which was given to you through prophecy** - This can be stated in active form. AT: "which you received when leaders of the church spoke God's word" (See: [Active or Passive](#))
- **laying on of the hands of the elders** - This was a ceremony in which the church leaders put their hands on Timothy and prayed that God would enable him to do the work he had commanded him to do.
- **Care for these things. Be in them** - Paul speaks of God's gifts to Timothy as if he could physically be in them. AT: "Do all these things and live according to them" (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **so that your progress may be evident to all people** - Paul speaks of Timothy's increasing ability to serve God as if it were a physical object that others could look at. AT: "so other people will know that you are serving God better and better" (See: [Metaphor](#))

- **Give careful attention to yourself** - “Conduct yourself carefully” or “Control your own behavior”
- **Continue in these things** - “Continue to do these things”
- **you will save yourself and those who listen to you** - “you will keep yourself and those who listen to you from believing false messages and from doing wrong actions.” People who believe false messages and do wrong actions can expect to suffer as a result. Paul does not want Timothy and his friends to suffer for believing and doing wrong things.

Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Timothy](#)
- [1 Timothy 04 General Notes](#)
- [1 Timothy 4 Translation Questions](#)

1 Timothy 5 General Notes

Special concepts in this chapter

Honor and respect

Paul encourages younger Christians to show honor and respect towards older Christians. Different cultures show respect to older people in different ways.

Widows

In the ancient Near East, it was important to take care of the widows. This is because they could not provide a living for themselves.

Links:

- [1 Timothy 05:01 Notes](#)

1 Timothy 5:1-2

UDB:

¹ Do not speak harshly to a man older than yourself. Instead, encourage him as if he were your father. Do the same to younger men as if they were your brothers. ² Encourage older women as mothers, and younger women as if they were your sisters. Act toward them in a way that no one can criticize.

ULB:

⁵ ¹ Do not scold an older man. Instead, exhort him as if he were a father. Exhort younger men as if they were brothers. ² Exhort older women as mothers, and younger women as sisters in all purity.

translationWords:

- [exhort, exhortation](#)
- [pure, purify, purification](#)

translationNotes:

- **Connecting Statement:** - Paul continues to tell Timothy how to treat the men, women, widows, and younger women in the church.
- **General Information:** - Paul was giving these commands to one person, Timothy. Languages that have different forms of “you” or different forms for commands would use the singular form here. (See: [Forms of You](#))
- **Do not scold an older man** - “Do not speak harshly to an older man”
- **Instead, exhort him** - “Instead, encourage him”
- **as if he were a father ... as if they were brothers ... as mothers ... as sisters** - Paul uses these similes to tell Timothy that he should treat fellow believers with sincere love and respect. (See: [Simile](#))
- **and younger women** - You can state clearly the understood information. AT: “and exhort younger women” or “and encourage younger women” (See: [Ellipsis](#))
- **in all purity** - “with pure thoughts and actions” or “in a holy way”

Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Timothy](#)
- [1 Timothy 05 General Notes](#)
- [1 Timothy 5 Translation Questions](#)

1 Timothy 5:3-4

UDB:

³ Respect the widows if they are true widows. ⁴ But if a widow has children or grandchildren, these should honor their mother at home and pay her back for everything she has done for them. If they do this, they will please God.

ULB:

³ Honor widows, the real widows. ⁴ But if a widow has children or grandchildren, let them first learn to show honor in their own household. Let them repay their parents, because this is pleasing to God.

translationWords:

- honor, to honor
- household
- God

translationNotes:

- **Honor widows** - “Respect and provide for widows”
- **the real widows** - “widows with no one to provide for them”
- **let them first learn** - “first of all they should learn” or “let them make it a priority to learn”
- **in their own household** - “to their own family” or “to those living in their homes”
- **Let them repay their parents** - “Let them do good to their parents in return for the good things their parents have given them”

Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Timothy](#)
- [1 Timothy 05 General Notes](#)
- [1 Timothy 5 Translation Questions](#)

1 Timothy 5:5-6

UDB:

⁵ Now, a real widow is a widow who has no family members. So she depends on God and on what he gives her when she asks him and prays to him all day and night long. ⁶ But a widow who lives for how she can please herself is dead, even though she is still alive.

ULB:

⁵ But a real widow is left all alone. She puts her confidence in God. She always remains with requests and prayers both night and day. ⁶ However, the woman who lives for pleasure is dead, even though she is still alive.

translationWords:

- confidence, confident
- God
- pray, prayer
- death, die, dead
- life, live, living, alive

translationNotes:

- **But a real widow is left all alone** - “But one who is truly a widow has no family”
- **She always remains with requests and prayers** - “She continues to make requests and prayers”
- **requests and prayers** - These two words mean basically the same thing. Paul uses them together to emphasize how much these widows pray. (See: [Doublet](#))
- **both night and day** - The words “night” and “day” are used together to mean “at all times.” AT: “all the time” (See: [Merism](#))
- **However** - “But”
- **is dead** - Paul speaks about people who do not seek to please God as if they were dead. AT: “is like a dead person, she does not respond to God” (See [Metaphor](#))
- **is still alive** - This refers to physical life.

Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Timothy](#)
- [1 Timothy 05 General Notes](#)
- [1 Timothy 5 Translation Questions](#)

1 Timothy 5:7-8

UDB:

⁷ You should announce these things so that these widows and their families will not do anything wrong. ⁸ But anyone who does not try to help his own relatives, especially those who live in his own house, that person rejects what we believe. He is, in fact, worse than an unbeliever.

ULB:

⁷ And preach these things so that they may be without reproach. ⁸ But if someone does not provide for his own relatives, especially for those of his own household, he has denied the faith and is worse than an unbeliever.

translationWords:

- [preach](#)
- [reproach](#)
- [household](#)
- [faith](#)
- [unbeliever, unbelief](#)

translationNotes:

- **And preach these things** - “Command these things as well”
- **so that they may be without reproach** - “so that no one can find fault with them.” Possible meanings of “they” are 1) “these widows and their families” (UDB) or 2) “the believers.” It might be best to leave the subject as “they.”
- **does not provide for his own relatives** - “does not provide for what his relatives need” or “does not help with his relatives’ needs”
- **for those of his own household** - “for those family members living in his home”
- **he has denied the faith** - “he has acted contrary to the truth we believe”
- **is worse than an unbeliever** - “is worse than those who do not believe in Jesus.” Paul means this person is worse than an unbeliever because even unbelievers take care of their relatives. Therefore, a believer should certainly take care of his relatives.

Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Timothy](#)
- [1 Timothy 05 General Notes](#)
- [1 Timothy 5 Translation Questions](#)

1 Timothy 5:9-10

UDB:

⁹ Put a woman on the list of true widows if she is more than sixty years old. She also must have had only one husband, to whom she had been faithful. ¹⁰ People must know that she does good deeds: perhaps she takes care of children; perhaps she welcomes strangers; perhaps she helps the believers or people who are suffering; or perhaps she is known for doing a large variety of good things.

ULB:

⁹ Let a woman be enrolled as a widow who is not younger than sixty, a wife of one husband. ¹⁰ She must be known for good deeds, whether it is that she has cared for children, or has been hospitable to strangers, or has washed the feet of the believers, or has relieved the afflicted, or has been devoted to every good work.

translationWords:

- good, goodness
- works, deeds, work, acts
- believer
- afflict, affliction

translationNotes:

- **be enrolled as a widow** - There seems to have been a list, written or not, of widows. The church members met these women's needs for shelter, clothing, and food; and these women were expected to devote their lives to serving the Christian community.
- **who is not younger than sixty** - As Paul will explain in 5:11-16, widows who were younger than 60 years old might get married again. Therefore the Christian community was to care only for widows who were older than 60. (See: [Numbers](#))
- **a wife of one husband** - Possible meanings are 1) she was always faithful to her husband or 2) she had not divorced her husband then married another man.
- **She must be known for good deeds** - This can be stated in active form. AT: "People must be able to attest to her good deeds" (See: [Active or Passive](#))
- **has been hospitable to strangers** - "has welcomed strangers into her home"
- **washed the feet of the believers** - Washing the dirty feet of people who have been walking in the dirt and mud is one way of meeting other people's needs and making life more enjoyable for them. This probably means she did humble work in general. AT: "has done common work to help other believers" (See: [Metonymy](#))

- **believers** - Some versions translate “believers” here as, “the saints” or “God’s holy people.” The essential idea is to refer to Christian believers.
- **has relieved the afflicted** - Here “the afflicted” is a nominal adjective that can be stated as an adjective. AT: “she has helped those who are suffering” (See: [Nominal Adjectives](#))
- **has been devoted to every good work** - “has given herself to doing all kinds of good deeds”

Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Timothy](#)
- [1 Timothy 05 General Notes](#)
- [1 Timothy 5 Translation Questions](#)

1 Timothy 5:11-13

UDB:

¹¹ But do not put younger widows on the widows' list, because they often want to marry again when they change their minds and put married love ahead of Christ. ¹² When they do this, then they become guilty of going back on their commitment to being widows. ¹³ Also, they go from house to house and get into the habit of doing nothing. They also engage in foolish and trivial activities and say things that they should not say.

ULB:

¹¹ But as for younger widows, refuse to enroll them in the list. For when they give in to bodily desires against Christ, they want to marry. ¹² In this way they incur guilt because they revoke their first commitment. ¹³ They also become accustomed to being idle. They go around from house to house. Not only do they become idle, but they also become gossips and meddling. They say things they should not say.

translationWords:

- [guilt, guilty](#)
- [gossip](#)

translationNotes:

- **But as for younger widows, refuse to enroll them in the list** - "But do not include younger widows in the list." The list was of widows aged 60 years and older whom the Christian community would help.
- **For when they give in to bodily desires against Christ, they want to marry** - "For when they prefer to fulfill their sensual desires and get married, they go against their promise to serve Christ as widows"
- **revoke their first commitment** - "do not keep their prior commitment" or "do not do what they promised before to do"
- **commitment** - The commitment of the widows was their agreement to serve the Christian community for the rest of their lives if the community would supply the widows' needs.
- **become accustomed to being idle** - "get into the habit of doing nothing" (UDB)
- **gossips** - These are people who talk about other people's private lives.
- **meddlesome** - "busybodies." These are people who interfere in other people's lives.

Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Timothy](#)

- 1 Timothy 05 General Notes
- 1 Timothy 5 Translation Questions

1 Timothy 5:14-16

UDB:

¹⁴ So I prefer that younger widows get married, have children, and run their households, so that Satan, the enemy, gets no opportunity to accuse them of doing wrong. ¹⁵ I write these things because some younger widows have already left the way of Christ to follow Satan.

¹⁶ If any believing woman has widows among her relatives, let her help them, so those widows will not be a burden to the church. In this way the church will be able to help real widows.

ULB:

¹⁴ I therefore want younger women to marry, to bear children, to manage the house, in order to give the adversary no opportunity to accuse us of doing evil. ¹⁵ For some have already turned aside after Satan. ¹⁶ If any believing woman has widows, let her help them, so that the church will not be weighed down, so that it might help the real widows.

translationWords:

- house
- adversary, enemy
- accuse, accusation, accuser
- evil, wicked, wickedness
- turn, turn away, turn back
- Satan, devil, evil one
- believe, believe in, belief
- church, Church

translationNotes:

- **to manage the house** - “to take care of everyone in her house”
- **the adversary** - Possible meanings are 1) this refers to Satan or 2) this refers to unbelievers.
- **to accuse us** - Here “us” refers to the entire Christian community. (See: **Inclusive “We”**)
- **turned aside after Satan** - Paul speaks of living in faithfulness to Christ as if it were a path to be followed. This means the woman stopped obeying Jesus and started obeying Satan. AT: “left the path of Christ to follow Satan” or “decided to obey Satan instead of Christ” (See: **Metaphor**)
- **any believing woman** - “any Christian woman” or “any woman who believes in Christ”
- **has widows** - “has widows among her relatives”
- **so that the church will not be weighed down** - Paul speaks of the community having to help more people than they are able as if they were carrying too much weight on their backs.

This can be stated in active form. AT: “so that the Christian community will not have to help widows whose families could provide for them” (See: [Metaphor](#) and [Active or Passive](#))

- **real widows** - “those women who have no one to provide for them”

Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Timothy](#)
- [1 Timothy 05 General Notes](#)
- [1 Timothy 5 Translation Questions](#)

1 Timothy 5:17-18

UDB:

¹⁷ Let the believers give double honor to the elders who lead them well, and especially to the elders who preach and teach God's word. ¹⁸ For the scripture says, "You shall not keep the ox from eating the grain that he is treading out," and "The laborer deserves to get his pay."

ULB:

¹⁷ Let the elders who rule well be considered worthy of double honor, especially those who work with the word and in teaching. ¹⁸ For the scripture says, "You shall not put a muzzle on an ox while it treads the grain," and "The laborer is worthy of his wages."

translationWords:

- elder
- ruler, rulers, rule
- worthy, worth, unworthy, worthless
- honor, to honor
- word
- teach, teaching, teacher, taught
- word of God, word of Yahweh, word of the Lord, scripture
- ox, oxen
- grain
- labor, laborer

translationNotes:

- **Connecting Statement:** - Paul again talks of how elders (overseers) should be treated and then gives Timothy some personal instructions.
- **Let the elders who rule well be considered worthy** - This can be stated in active form. AT: "All believers should think of the elders who are good leaders as worthy" (See: **Active or Passive**)
- **double honor** - Possible meanings are 1) "of respect and payment" or 2) "more respect than others receive"
- **those who work with the word and in teaching** - Paul speaks about the word as if it is an object which a person can work with. AT: "those who preach and teach God's word" (See: **Metaphor**)
- **For the scripture says** - This is personification that means that this is what someone has written in the scriptures. AT: "For we read in the scriptures that" (See: **Personification**)

- **You shall not put a muzzle on an ox while it treads the grain** - Paul is using this quotation as a metaphor meaning that church leaders deserve to receive payment from the Christian community for their work. (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **muzzle** - a sleeve that goes over an animal's snout and mouth to prevent it from eating while it is doing work (See: [Translate Unknowns](#))
- **treads the grain** - This is when an ox walks on or pulls a heavy object over the cut grain to separate the grain from the stalks. The oxen were allowed to eat some of the grain as they worked.
- **is worthy of** - "deserves"

Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Timothy](#)
- [1 Timothy 05 General Notes](#)
- [1 Timothy 5 Translation Questions](#)

1 Timothy 5:19-20

UDB:

¹⁹ Do not listen to anyone who accuses an elder of doing wrong, unless two or three people are testifying about the matter. ²⁰ Those who continue to sin, correct them where everyone can see you, so that the rest of the people will be afraid to sin.

ULB:

¹⁹ Do not receive an accusation against an elder unless there are two or three witnesses. ²⁰ Correct sinners before all so that the rest may be afraid.

translationWords:

- [accuse, accusation, accuser](#)
- [elder](#)
- [witness, eyewitness](#)
- [sin, sinful, sinner, sinning](#)
- [fear, afraid, fear of Yahweh](#)

translationNotes:

- **Do not receive an accusation** - Paul speaks of accusations as if they were objects that could be physically accepted by people. AT: “Do not accept as true any accusation that someone speaks” (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **two or three** - “at least two” or “two or more”
- **sinners** - This refers to anyone doing anything that disobeys or displeases God, even things that other people do not know about.
- **before all** - “where everyone can see”
- **so that the rest may be afraid** - “so that others will be afraid to sin”

Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Timothy](#)
- [1 Timothy 05 General Notes](#)
- [1 Timothy 5 Translation Questions](#)

1 Timothy 5:21-22

UDB:

²¹ God, Jesus Christ, and the chosen angels see me as I solemnly command you to do these things. Be sure that you do not judge anyone before you should. Be sure that you do not favor one person over another when you lead the believers.

²² When you want someone to begin to serve the believers, make no decision too quickly, so you do not choose them too soon. And do not be a partner with anyone in sinning. You must keep yourself without fault.

ULB:

²¹ I solemnly command you before God and before Christ Jesus and their chosen angels, that you keep these commands without prejudice and that you do nothing out of favoritism. ²² Place hands hastily on no one. Do not share in the sins of another person. You should keep yourself pure.

translationWords:

- command, to command, commandment
- God
- Jesus, Jesus Christ, Christ Jesus
- angel, archangel
- favor, favorable, favoritism
- sin, sinful, sinner, sinning
- pure, purify, purification

translationNotes:

- **their chosen angels** - This means the angels whom God and Jesus have chosen to serve them in a special way.
- **you keep these commands without prejudice and that you do nothing out of favoritism** - The words “bias” and “favoritism” mean basically the same thing. Paul is emphasizing that Timothy must judge honestly and be fair to everyone. AT: “that you keep these rules without being partial or showing favor to anyone” (See: [Doublet](#))
- **keep these commands** - Possible meanings are 1) this refers to the rules Paul just told Timothy or 2) this refers to the rules Paul is about to tell Timothy.
- **Place hands** - This was a ceremony in which one or more church leaders would place their hands on people and pray that God would enable those people to serve the church in a way that would please God. Timothy was to wait until the person had shown good character for a long time before officially setting that person apart to serve the Christian community.

- **Do not share in the sins of another person** - Paul speaks of someone's sin as if it were an object that could be shared with others. AT: "do not join in another person's sin" or "do not participate when another person sins" (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **Do not share in the sins of another person** - Possible meanings are 1) if Timothy chose someone who was guilty of sin to be a church worker, God would hold Timothy responsible for that person's sin or 2) Timothy should not commit sins he saw others committing.

Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Timothy](#)
- [1 Timothy 05 General Notes](#)
- [1 Timothy 5 Translation Questions](#)

1 Timothy 5:23-25

UDB:

²³ No longer drink only water, Timothy. Instead, drink a little wine for your many stomach sicknesses. ²⁴ The sins of some people are clear to everyone, and the church does not need much time to judge them. But the church does not discover some sins until later. ²⁵ In the same way, some good deeds are clear to everybody, but even the other good deeds will become clear at some time in the future.

ULB:

²³ You should no longer drink water. Instead, you should take a little wine for the stomach and your frequent sicknesses. ²⁴ The sins of some people are openly known, and they go before them into judgment. But some sins follow later. ²⁵ Likewise, some good works are openly known, but even the others cannot be hidden.

translationWords:

- wine, wineskin, new wine
- sin, sinful, sinner, sinning
- judge, judgment
- good, goodness
- works, deeds, work, acts

translationNotes:

- **You should no longer drink water** - It is implied that Paul means Timothy should not drink only water. He is telling Timothy to use wine as medicine. The water in that area often caused sickness. (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))
- **The sins of some people are openly known** - This can be stated in active form. AT: “The sins of some people are very obvious” (See: [Active or Passive](#))
- **they go before them into judgment** - “their sins go before those people into judgment.” Paul speaks of sins as if they were moving. Possible meanings are 1) Their sins are so obvious that everyone will know they are guilty even before anyone testifies against them or 2) Their sins are evident, and God judges them now. (See: [Personification](#))
- **But some sins follow later** - “But some sins follow those people later.” Paul speaks of sins as if they were moving. Possible meanings are 1) Timothy and the Christian community will not know about certain sins until later or 2) God will not judge some sins until the final judgment. (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **good** - Here “good” means they fit with God’s character, purposes, and will.
- **some good works are openly known** - “some good works are obvious”

- **but even the others cannot be hidden** - Paul speaks of sins as if they were objects that someone could hide. This can be stated in active form. AT: “but people will later find out about even the good deeds that are not obvious” (See: [Metaphor](#) and [Active or Passive](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Timothy](#)
- [1 Timothy 05 General Notes](#)
- [1 Timothy 5 Translation Questions](#)

1 Timothy 6 General Notes

Special concepts in this chapter

Slavery

This passage does not condone slavery as an acceptable practice. Paul's teaching on slavery would have been rather radical at this time because masters were not expected to treat their slaves in such a pleasant way. Overall, Paul's focus is on living in a way that pleases God despite the circumstances of one's life.

Links:

- [1 Timothy 06:01 Notes](#)

1 Timothy 6:1-2

UDB:

¹ As for believers who are slaves, they should honor their masters in every way, so that no one will insult God or what we teach.

² Slaves who have believing masters should not respect them less, for they are brothers. Instead, they should serve their masters even better, because the masters whom they serve are their brothers whom they should love. Teach and announce these things to the believers.

ULB:

6 ¹ Let all who are under the yoke as slaves regard their own masters as worthy of all honor. They should do this so that the name of God and the teaching might not be blasphemed. ² The slaves who have believing masters should not disrespect them because they are brothers. Instead, they should serve them all the more. For the masters who are helped by their work are believers and are loved. Teach and declare these things.

translationWords:

- yoke
- servant, slave, slavery
- lord, master, sir
- worthy, worth, unworthy, worthless
- honor, to honor
- name
- God
- blasphemy, blaspheme, blasphemous
- believe, believe in, belief
- brother
- serve, service
- declare, declaration

translationNotes:

- **Connecting Statement:** - Paul gives some specific instructions to slaves and masters then continues with instructions on living godly.
- **Let all who are under the yoke as slaves** - Paul speaks of people working as slaves as if they are oxen carrying a yoke. AT: “Let all who are working as slaves” (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **Let all who** - It is implied that Paul is speaking about believers. AT: “Let all who are believers” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

- **the name of God and the teaching might not be blasphemed** - This can be stated in active and positive form. AT: “the unbelievers might always speak respectfully about the name of God and the teaching” (See: [Active or Passive](#) and [Litotes](#))
- **the name of God** - Here “name” refers to God’s nature or character. AT: “the character of God” or “God” (See: [Metonymy](#))
- **the teaching** - “the faith” or “the gospel”
- **they are brothers** - Here “brothers” means “fellow believers.”
- **For the masters who are helped by their work** - This can be stated in active form. AT: “For the masters whom the slaves help with their work” (See: [Active or Passive](#))
- **and are loved** - This can be stated in active form. Possible meanings are 1) “and the slaves should love them” or 2) “whom God loves” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Timothy](#)
- [1 Timothy 06 General Notes](#)
- [1 Timothy 6 Translation Questions](#)

1 Timothy 6:3-5

UDB:

³ If anyone teaches false doctrines that do not agree with the reliable and true teachings of our Lord Jesus Christ, ⁴ that person is very proud and does not understand anything. They want to argue about unimportant matters and about certain words, and people who listen to them envy others. They quarrel with others and with one another. They say bad things about others. They suspect that others have evil motives. ⁵ Their whole way of thinking has become completely wrong because they have rejected true things. As a result, they make the mistake of thinking that by doing religious things they will get a lot of money.

ULB:

³ Suppose that someone teaches differently and does not accept our faithful instruction, that is, the words of our Lord Jesus Christ. Suppose that they do not accept the teaching that leads to godliness. ⁴ That person is proud and knows nothing. Instead, he is sick with controversies and arguments about words. These words result in envy, strife, insults, evil suspicions, and ⁵ the constant conflict between people with depraved minds. They turn away from truth. They think that godliness is a way to become rich.[1]Some old copies add, *Withdraw from such things*, but the best ancient copies do not.

translationWords:

- faithful, faithfulness
- instruct, instruction
- word
- Lord
- Jesus, Jesus Christ, Christ Jesus
- godly, godliness
- proud, pride, prideful
- envy, covet
- evil, wicked, wickedness
- mind
- turn, turn away, turn back
- true, truth, come true

translationNotes:

- **teaches differently** - “teaches a different doctrine” or “teaches what is not correct”
- **that leads to godliness** - “that helps people do what is godly” or “that helps people live in a way that pleases God”

- **knows nothing** - “understands nothing about God’s truth”
- **he is sick with controversies and arguments** - Paul speaks of people who feel compelled to engage in useless arguments as if they were ill. Such people greatly desire the act of arguing itself, and do not really want to find a way to agree. AT: “all he wants to do is argue” or “he craves arguments” (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **he is sick** - Here “he” is not referring to a specific person but to anyone in general. AT: “They are sick” (See: [Generic Noun Phrases](#))
- **about words** - “about the meaning of words”
- **envy** - “the desire to have what others have”
- **strife** - “arguments between believers”
- **insults** - “people falsely saying bad things about each other”
- **evil suspicions** - “people feeling like others want to do evil to them”
- **depraved minds** - “wicked minds”
- **They turn away from truth** - Here “turn away” is an idiom that means to stop doing something. AT: “They stop believing the truth” (See: [Idiom](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Timothy](#)
- [1 Timothy 06 General Notes](#)
- [1 Timothy 6 Translation Questions](#)

1 Timothy 6:6-8

UDB:

⁶ Well, we truly do gain great benefit when we behave in a way that honors God and when we are content with what we have. ⁷ Indeed, we brought nothing into the world when we were born, and we cannot take anything out of it when we die. ⁸ So if we have food and clothing, we should be satisfied with these.

ULB:

⁶ Now godliness with contentment is great gain. ⁷ For we have brought nothing into the world. Neither are we able to take out anything. ⁸ Instead, let us be satisfied with food and clothing.

translationWords:

- [godly, godliness](#)

translationNotes:

- **Now** - This marks a break in the teaching. Here Paul begins to contrast the kind of riches the wicked people seek through godliness (6:5) and the true kind of gain people receive through godliness. AT: “Of course”
- **godliness with contentment is great gain** - The words “godliness” and “contentment” are abstract nouns. AT: “it is great gain for a person to do what is godly and to be content with what they have” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))
- **is great gain** - “provides great benefits” or “does many good things for us”
- **brought nothing into the world** - “brought nothing into the world when we were born”(UDB)
- **Neither are we able to take out anything** - “And we can take nothing out of the world when we die”
- **let us** - “we should”

Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Timothy](#)
- [1 Timothy 06 General Notes](#)
- [1 Timothy 6 Translation Questions](#)

1 Timothy 6:9-10

UDB:

⁹ But some people strongly desire to be rich. As a result, they do wrong things to get money, and this will cause them to be caught as animals get caught in traps. They foolishly desire many things, and so they get hurt. God will completely destroy them! ¹⁰ People do all sorts of evil things when they want to have a lot of money. Because some people longed for money, they have stopped believing the truth that all of us believe and they have caused themselves to be very sorrowful.

ULB:

⁹ Now those who want to become wealthy fall into temptation, into a trap. They fall into many foolish and harmful passions, and into whatever else makes people sink into ruin and destruction. ¹⁰ For the love of money is a root of all kinds of evil. Some people who desire it have been misled away from the faith and have pierced themselves with much grief.

translationWords:

- tempt, temptation
- snare, trap
- fool, foolish, folly
- ruin, ruins
- evil, wicked, wickedness
- faith

translationNotes:

- **Now** - This word marks a break in the teaching. Here Paul returns to the topic about those who think being godly will make them wealthy (See: 6:5).
- **to become wealthy fall into temptation, into a trap** - Paul speaks about those who let the temptation of money cause them to sin as if they are animals that have fallen into a hole that a hunter has used as a trap. AT: "to become wealthy will encounter more temptation than they can resist, and they will be like an animal in a trap (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **They fall into many foolish and harmful passions** - This continues the trap metaphor. This means that their foolish and harmful passion will overcome them. AT: "And as an animal falls into a hunter's trap, they will fall into many foolish and harmful passions" (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **and into whatever else makes people sink into ruin and destruction** - Paul speaks about those that let sin destroy them as if they are a boat that sinks under the water. AT: "and into other kinds of evil that ruin and destroy a person like a boat sinking under the water" (See: [Metaphor](#))

- **For the love of money is a root of all kinds of evil** - Paul speaks of the cause of evil as if it were a plant root. AT: “because loving money is a cause of all kinds of evil” (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **who desire it** - “who desire money”
- **have been misled away from the faith** - Paul speaks of wrong desires as if they were evil guides who intentionally guide people down the wrong path. This can be stated in active form. AT: “have let their desires lead them away from the truth” or “have stopped believing the truth” (See: [Metaphor](#) and [Active or Passive](#))
- **have pierced themselves with much grief** - Paul speaks about grief as if it were a sword that a person uses to stab themselves. AT: “have caused themselves to be very sorrowful” (UDB) (See: [Metaphor](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Timothy](#)
- [1 Timothy 06 General Notes](#)
- [1 Timothy 6 Translation Questions](#)

1 Timothy 6:11-12

UDB:

¹¹ But you, the man who serves God, keep completely away from such love of money. Decide that you will do what is right, and that you will honor God. Trust God, and love others. Endure difficult circumstances. Always be gentle with people. ¹² Try earnestly and with all your energy to live like what you believe. Continue to do your tasks well in order that you will know for sure that you will live eternally. Remember that God chose you to live with him, and that when many elders were listening you said strongly what you believe.

ULB:

¹¹ But you, man of God, flee from these things. Pursue righteousness, godliness, faithfulness, love, endurance, and gentleness. ¹² Fight the good fight of faith. Take hold of the everlasting life to which you were called. It was about this that you gave witness before many witnesses as to what is good.

translationWords:

- righteous, righteousness
- godly, godliness
- faithful, faithfulness
- love
- endure, endurance
- faith
- everlasting, eternal, eternity
- call, calling, called, call out
- witness, eyewitness
- good, goodness

translationNotes:

- **But you** - Here “you” is singular and refers to Timothy. (See: [Forms of You](#))
- **man of God** - “servant of God” or “person who belongs to God”
- **flee from these things** - Paul speaks of these temptations and sins as if they were things that a person could physically run away from. AT: “treat these things like creatures who want to harm you” (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **these things** - Possible meanings of “these things” are 1) the “love of money” (UDB) or 2) the different teachings, pride, arguments, and the love of money.
- **Pursue righteousness** - “Run after” or “Chase.” Paul speaks of righteousness and other good qualities as if they were things that a person could run after. This idiom is the opposite of “flee from.” It means to try your best to obtain something. AT: “Seek to gain” or “Do your best to act in” (See: [Metaphor](#))

- **Fight the good fight of faith** - Here Paul speaks about a person continuing in faith as if they are an athlete fighting to win a contest or a warrior fighting a battle. AT: “Try your hardest to obey Christ’s teachings with as much energy as an athlete uses in a contest” (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **Take hold of the everlasting life** - This continues the metaphor. Paul speaks about a person receiving eternal life as if they are a victorious athlete or warrior taking their prize. AT: “Take eternal life as your reward as a victorious athlete takes his prize” (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **to which you were called** - This can be stated in active form. AT: “to which God has called you” (See: [Active or Passive](#))
- **gave witness** - “gave testimony” or “testified”
- **before many witnesses** - Paul expresses the idea of location in order to signal the idea of the people to whom Timothy was speaking. AT: “to many witnesses” (See: [Metonymy](#))
- **as to what is good** - “about what you believe”

Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Timothy](#)
- [1 Timothy 06 General Notes](#)
- [1 Timothy 6 Translation Questions](#)

1 Timothy 6:13-14

UDB:

¹³ God, who gives life to all things, knows everything that you do. Christ Jesus also knows everything that you do. He strongly declared what was true when he was on trial before Pontius Pilate.

¹⁴ So as you remember those things, I command you to hold tightly on to what Christ has commanded us in every way. Hold fast to those teachings in a way that our Lord Jesus Christ will not need to criticize you about what is wrong, until he comes again.

ULB:

¹³ I give you this command before God, who causes all things to live, and before Christ Jesus, who spoke what is true to Pontius Pilate: ¹⁴ keep the commandment perfectly, without reproach, until the appearance of our Lord Jesus Christ.

translationWords:

- command, to command, commandment
- God
- Jesus, Jesus Christ, Christ Jesus
- true, truth, come true
- Pilate
- perfect
- reproach
- Lord

translationNotes:

- **Connecting Statement:** - Paul talks of Christ's coming, gives specific instructions to the rich, and lastly closes with a special message to Timothy.
- **I give you this command** - "This is what I command you"
- **before God** - "in the presence of God." It is implied that Paul as asking God to be his witness. AT: "with God as a witness" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))
- **before Christ** - "in the presence of Christ." It is implied that Paul as asking Jesus to be his witness. AT: "with Christ Jesus as witness" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))
- **without reproach** - Possible meanings are 1) Jesus will not find fault with Timothy (UDB) or 2) other people cannot find fault with Timothy.
- **the appearance of our Lord Jesus Christ** - "until our Lord Jesus Christ comes again"

Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Timothy](#)
- [1 Timothy 06 General Notes](#)
- [1 Timothy 6 Translation Questions](#)

1 Timothy 6:15-16

UDB:

¹⁵ Remember that God will cause Jesus to come again at the proper time. God is awesome! He is the only Ruler! He rules over all other people who rule! ¹⁶ He is the only one who will never die, and he lives in heaven in light that is so bright that no one can approach it! He is the one whom no person has ever seen and whom no person is able to see! My desire is that all people will honor him and that he will rule powerfully forever! May it be so!

ULB:

¹⁵ God will reveal his appearing at the right time—God, the Blessed One, the only power, the King who reigns, the Lord who rules. ¹⁶ Only he has immortality and dwells in inapproachable light. No man sees him or is able to view him. To him be honor and eternal power. Amen.

translationWords:

- [bless, blessed, blessing](#)
- [power, powers](#)
- [king](#)
- [reign](#)
- [Lord](#)
- [ruler, rulers, rule](#)
- [honor, to honor](#)
- [everlasting, eternal, eternity](#)
- [amen, truly](#)

translationNotes:

- **God will reveal his appearing** - It is implied that God will reveal Jesus. AT: “God will reveal Jesus” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))
- **at the right time** - “at the proper time” (UDB)
- **the Blessed One** - “the One worthy of praise.” This refers to God the Father.
- **Only he has immortality** - “Only he has the power to live forever”
- **dwells in inapproachable light** - “and he dwells in a light so bright that no one can approach him”

Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Timothy](#)
- [1 Timothy 06 General Notes](#)

- 1 Timothy 6 Translation Questions

1 Timothy 6:17-19

UDB:

¹⁷ Tell the believers who are rich here in this present world that they should not be proud, and that they should not trust in their many possessions, because they cannot be certain how long they will have them. Instead, they should trust in God. He is the one who abundantly gives us everything we have in order that we may enjoy it. ¹⁸ Also, tell them to do good things. These are true wealth. Indeed, they should share with others very much of what they have. ¹⁹ If they do that, it will be as though they were storing up for themselves many things that God will give them. When they do this, they will have the life that is the real life.

ULB:

¹⁷ Tell the rich in this world not to be proud, and not to hope in riches, which are uncertain. Instead, they should hope in God. He offers to us all the true riches to enjoy. ¹⁸ Tell them to do good, to be rich in good works, to be generous, and willing to share. ¹⁹ In that way, they will store up for themselves a good foundation for what is to come, so that they will take hold of real life.

translationWords:

- proud, pride, prideful
- hope
- God
- true, truth, come true
- good, goodness
- works, deeds, work, acts
- foundation, founded
- life, live, living, alive

translationNotes:

- **Tell the rich** - Here “rich” is a nominal adjective. It can be stated as an adjective. AT: “Tell those who are rich” (See: [Nominal Adjectives](#))
- **in riches, which are uncertain** - “in the many things that they own that they may lose.” The reference here is to physical objects.
- **all the true riches** - “all the things that will make us truly happy.” The reference here may include physical objects, but it more likely refers to states like love, joy, and peace that people try to obtain by means of physical objects.
- **be rich in good works** - Paul speaks of spiritual blessings as if they were earthly wealth. AT: “serve and help others in many ways” (See: [Metaphor](#))

- **they will store up for themselves a good foundation for what is to come** - Here Paul speaks about God's blessings that he gives in heaven as if they are riches that a person is storing away for later use. AT: "they will have a large amount of blessings from Christ when he returns" (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **take hold of real life** - This recalls the sports metaphor of [6:12](#), where the prize is something that the winner can actually hold in his hands. Here the "prize" is "real" life. (See: [Metaphor](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Timothy](#)
- [1 Timothy 06 General Notes](#)
- [1 Timothy 6 Translation Questions](#)

1 Timothy 6:20-21

UDB:

²⁰ Timothy, faithfully proclaim the true message that Jesus has given to you. Avoid the people who want to chatter about things that are not important to God. Avoid the people who say that they have true knowledge but who say things that are against the true things we teach. ²¹ Certain men teach these things and so they stop believing the truth. May God be kind to you all.

ULB:

²⁰ Timothy, protect what was given to you. Avoid the foolish talk and contradictory arguments of what is falsely called knowledge. ²¹ Some men proclaim these things and so they have missed the faith. May grace be with you.

translationWords:

- Timothy
- proclaim, proclamation
- faith
- grace, gracious

translationNotes:

- **protect what was given to you** - This can be stated in active form. AT: “faithfully proclaim the true message that Jesus has given to you” (UDB) (See: [Active or Passive](#))
- **Avoid the foolish talk** - “Do not pay attention to the foolish talk”
- **of what is falsely called knowledge** - This can be stated in active form. AT: “of what some people falsely call knowledge” (See: [Active or Passive](#))
- **they have missed the faith** - Paul speaks of faith in Christ as if it were a target at which to aim. AT: “they have not understood or believed the true faith” (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **May grace be with you** - “May God give grace to all of you.” The “you” is plural and refers to the whole Christian community. (See: [Forms of You](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Timothy](#)
- [1 Timothy 06 General Notes](#)
- [1 Timothy 6 Translation Questions](#)

translationQuestions

1 Timothy 1

Q? How was Paul made an apostle of Christ Jesus?

A. Paul was made an apostle according to the commandment of God. [1:1]

Q? What was the relationship between Paul and Timothy?

A. Timothy was Paul's true son in the faith. [1:2]

Q? Where was Timothy to remain?

A. Timothy was to remain in Ephesus. [1:3]

Q? What was Timothy to command certain people not to do?

A. He was to command them not to teach a different doctrine. [1:3]

Q? What did Paul say was the goal of his commandment and teaching?

A. His goal was love from a pure heart, from a good conscience, and from sincere faith. [1:5]

Q? For whom is the law made?

A. The law is for lawless, rebellious, ungodly people, and sinners. [1:9]

Q? What are four examples of sins that such people commit?

A. They commit murder, sexual immorality, kidnapping, and lying. [1:9-10]

Q? What sins did Paul formerly commit?

A. Paul was a blasphemer, persecutor, and a violent man. [1:13]

Q? What overflowed to Paul, resulting in Paul becoming an apostle of Jesus Christ?

A. The grace of our Lord overflowed to Paul. [1:14]

Q? Who did Christ Jesus come into the world to save?

A. Christ Jesus came into the world to save sinners. [1:15]

Q? Why does Paul say that he is an example of God's mercy?

A. Paul says he is an example because he was the worst of sinners, yet he received God's mercy first. [1:15-16]

Q? What things were said about Timothy with which Paul agrees?

A. Paul agrees with the prophecies made about Timothy, concerning Timothy's good warfare done with faith and a good conscience. [1:18-19]

Q? What did Paul do for those men who had rejected faith and a good conscience and had shipwrecked their faith?

A. Paul gave them over to Satan so that they may be taught not to blaspheme. [1:20]

1 Timothy 2

Q? For whom does Paul request that prayers be made?

A. Paul requests prayers be made for all people, for kings and all who are in authority. [2:1-2]

Q? What kind of life does Paul desire Christians be allowed to live?

A. Paul desires that Christians be allowed to live a peaceful and quiet life in all godliness and dignity. [2:2]

Q? What does God desire for all people?

A. God desires all people to be saved and to come to the knowledge of the truth. [2:4]

Q? What is Christ Jesus' position between God and man?

A. Christ Jesus is the mediator between God and man. [2:5]

Q? What did Christ Jesus do for all?

A. Christ Jesus gave himself as a ransom for all. [2:6]

Q? Who does the apostle Paul teach?

A. Paul is a teacher of the Gentiles. [2:7]

Q? What does Paul want men to do?

A. Paul wants men to pray and lift up holy hands. [2:8]

Q? What does Paul want women to do?

A. Paul wants women to dress modestly and with self-control. [2:9]

Q? What does Paul not allow a woman to do?

A. Paul does not permit a woman to teach or to exercise authority over a man. [2:12]

Q? What reasons does Paul give for this?

A. Paul says his reasons are that Adam was formed first, and that Adam was not deceived.

Q? In what does Paul want women to continue?

A. Paul wants women to continue in faith and love and sanctification with soundness of mind. [2:15]

1 Timothy 3

Q? What kind of work is the work of an overseer?

A. The work of an overseer is good work. [3:1]

Q? What must an overseer be able to do?

A. An overseer must be able to teach. [3:2]

Q? How must an overseer handle alcohol and money?

A. An overseer must not be addicted to alcohol, and must not love money. [3:3]

Q? How should an overseer's children treat him?

A. An overseer's children must obey and respect him. [3:4]

Q? Why is it important that an overseer manage his household well?

A. It is important because if he cannot manage his household well, he will likely not care well for a church. [3:5]

Q? What is the danger if the overseer is a new convert?

A. The danger is that he will become proud and fall into condemnation. [3:6]

Q? What must an overseer's reputation be with those outside the church?

A. An overseer must have a good reputation with those outside the church. [3:7]

Q? What should be done with deacons before they serve?

A. Before they serve, deacons should be approved. [3:10]

Q? What are some characteristics of godly women?

A. Godly women are dignified, not slanderers, moderate, and faithful in all things. [3:11]

Q? What is the house of God?

A. The house of God is the church. [3:15]

Q? After Jesus appeared in the flesh, was justified by the Spirit, and was seen by angels, what did he do?

A. Jesus was proclaimed among nations, believed on in the world, and taken up in glory. [3:16]

1 Timothy 4

Q? According to the Spirit, what will some people do in the later times?

A. Some people will leave the faith and pay attention to deceitful spirits. [4:1]

Q? What lies will these people teach?

A. They will forbid marriage and forbid eating some foods. [4:4]

Q? How is anything we eat consecrated and acceptable for our use?

A. Anything we eat is consecrated and acceptable through the word of God and prayer. [4:5]

Q? In what does Paul tell Timothy to train himself?

A. Paul tells Timothy to train himself in godliness. [4:7]

Q? Why is training in godliness more profitable than bodily training?

A. Training in godliness is more profitable because it holds promise for this life and the life to come. [4:8]

Q? What does Paul exhort Timothy to do with all of the good things that he has received in Paul's teaching to him?

A. Paul exhorts Timothy to proclaim and teach these things to others. [4:11]

Q? In what ways is Timothy to be an example to others?

A. Timothy is to be an example in word, conduct, love, faith, and purity. [4:12]

Q? How did Timothy receive the spiritual gift that he had?

A. The gift was given to Timothy by prophecy with the laying on of the hands of the elders. [4:14]

Q? If Timothy continues faithfully in his life and teaching, who will be saved?

A. Timothy will save himself and those who listen to him. [4:16]

1 Timothy 5

Q? How did Paul tell Timothy to treat an older man in the church?

A. Paul told Timothy to treat him as if he were a father. [5:1]

Q? What should children and grandchildren of a widow do for her?

A. Children and grandchildren should repay their parents and take care of her. [5:4]

Q? What has someone done who does not take care of those in his own household?

A. He has denied the faith and is worse than an unbeliever. [5:8]

Q? For what should a widow be known?

A. A widow should be known for good deeds. [5:10]

Q? What danger is there when a young widow commits to remaining a widow for the rest of her life?

A. There is the danger that she will later want to marry, revoking her prior commitment. [5:11-12]

Q? What does Paul want younger women to do?

A. Paul wants younger women to marry, to bear children, and to manage the house. [5:14]

Q? What should be done for elders who lead well?

A. Elders who lead well should be considered worthy of double honor. [5:17]

Q? What must there be before an accusation is received against an elder?

A. There must be two or three witnesses before an accusation is received against an elder. [5:19]

Q? Paul commands Timothy to be careful to keep these rules in what way?

A. Paul commands Timothy to be careful to keep these rules without favoritism. [5:21]

Q? For some people, their sins are not known until when?

A. For some people, their sins are not known until the judgment. [5:24]

1 Timothy 6

Q? How did Paul say slaves should regard their masters?

A. Paul said that slaves should regard their masters as worthy of honor. [6:1]

Q? What kind of person rejects healthy words and godly teaching?

A. The person who rejects healthy words and godly teaching is proud and knows nothing. [6:3-4]

Q? What does Paul say is great gain?

A. Paul says that godliness with contentment is great gain. [6:6]

Q? Why should we be content with food and clothing?

A. We should be content because we have brought nothing into the world, and cannot take anything out. [6:7-8]

Q? Into what do those who desire to become wealthy fall?

A. Those who desire to become wealthy fall into a temptation and trap. [6:9]

Q? What is a root of all kinds of evil?

A. The love of money is a root of all kinds of evil. [6:10]

Q? What has happened to some who have loved money?

A. Some who have loved money have wandered away from the faith. [6:10]

Q? What fight does Paul say Timothy must fight?

A. Paul says Timothy must fight the good fight of faith. [6:12]

Q? Where does the Blessed One and the only power dwell?

A. The Blessed One dwells in inapproachable light where no man can view him. [6:16]

Q? Why should the rich hope in God and not in uncertain riches?

A. The rich should hope in God because he offers all the true riches. [6:17]

Q? Those who are rich in good works do what for themselves?

A. Those who are rich in good works store up for themselves a good foundation, and take hold of real life. [6:19]

Q? Finally, what does Paul tell Timothy to do with the things given to him?

A. Paul tells Timothy to protect what has been given to him. [6:20]

translationWords

accuse, accusation, accuser

Definition:

The terms “accuse” and “accusation” refer to blaming someone for doing something wrong. A person who accuses others is an “accuser.”

- A false accusation is when a charge against someone is not true, as when Jesus was falsely accused of wrongdoing by the leaders of the Jews.
- In the New Testament book of Revelation, Satan is called “the accuser.”

Bible References:

Waiting

Adam

Facts:

Adam was the first person whom God created. He and his wife Eve were made in the image of God.

- God formed Adam from dirt and breathed life into him.
- Adam's name sounds similar to the Hebrew word for "red dirt" or "ground."
- The name "Adam" is the same as the Old Testament word for "mankind" or "human being."
- All people are descendants of Adam and Eve.
- Adam and Eve disobeyed God. This separated them from God and caused sin and death to come into the world.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [death](#), [die](#), [dead](#), [descendant](#), [descended from](#), [Eve](#), [image of God](#), [image](#), [life](#), [live](#), [living](#), [alive](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[01-09]** Then God said, "Let us make human beings in our image to be like us."
- **[01-10]** This man's name was **Adam**. God planted a garden where **Adam** could live, and put him there to care for it.
- **[01-12]** Then God said, "It is not good for man to be alone." But none of the animals could be **Adam's** helper.
- **[02-11]** And God clothed **Adam** and Eve with animal skins.
- **[02-12]** So God sent **Adam** and Eve away from the beautiful garden.
- **[49-08]** When **Adam** and Eve sinned, it affected all of their descendants.
- **[50-16]** Because **Adam** and Eve disobeyed God and brought sin into this world, God cursed it and decided to destroy it.
-

adversary, enemy

Definition:

An “adversary” is a person or group who is opposed to someone or something. The term “enemy” has a similar meaning.

- An adversary can be a person who tries to oppose you or harm you.
- A nation can be called an “adversary” when it fights against another nation.
- In the Bible, the devil is referred to as an “adversary” and an “enemy.”
- Adversary may be translated as “opponent” or “enemy,” but it suggests a stronger form of opposition.

(See: [Satan](#), [devil](#), [evil one](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

afflict, affliction

Definition:

The term “afflict” means to cause someone distress or suffering. An “affliction” is the disease, emotional grief, or other disaster that results from this.

- God afflicted his people with sickness or other hardships in order to cause them to repent of their sins and turn back to him.
- God caused afflictions or plagues to come on the people of Egypt because their king refused to obey God.
- To “be afflicted with” means to be suffering some kind of distress, such as a disease, persecution, or emotional grief.

Translation Suggestions:

- To afflict someone could be translated as “cause someone to experience troubles” or “cause someone to suffer” or “cause suffering to come.”
- In certain contexts “afflict” could be translated as “happen to” or “come to” or “bring suffering.”
- A phrase like, “afflict someone with leprosy” could be translated as, “cause someone to be sick with leprosy.”
- When a disease or disaster is sent to “afflict” people or animals, this could be translated as “cause suffering to.”
- Depending on the context, the term “affliction” could be translated as “calamity” or “sickness” or “suffering” or “great distress.” physical
- The phrase “afflicted with” could also be translated as, “suffering from” or “sick with.”

(See: [leprosy](#), [leper](#), [leprous](#), [plague](#), [suffer](#), [suffering](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

age**Definition:**

The term “age” refers to the number of years a person has lived. It also used to refer generally to a time period.

- Other words used to express an extended period of time include, “era” and “season.”
- Jesus refers to “this age” as the present time when evil, sin, and disobedience fill the earth.
- There will be a future age when righteousness will reign over a new heaven and a new earth.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, the term “age” could also be translated as, “era” or “number of years old” or “time period” or “time.”
- The phrase, “at a very old age” could be translated as, “at many years old” or “when he was very old” or “when he had lived a very long time.”
- The phrase, “this present evil age” means, “during this time right now when people are very evil.”

Bible References:

Waiting

amen, truly

Definition:

The term “amen” is a word used to emphasize or call attention to what a person has said. It is often used at the end of a prayer. Sometimes it is translated as “truly.”

- When used at the end of a prayer, “amen” communicates agreement with the prayer or expresses a desire that the prayer be fulfilled.
- In his teaching, Jesus used “amen” to emphasize the truth of what he said. He often followed that by “and I say to you” to introduce another teaching that related to the previous teaching.
- When Jesus uses “amen” this way, some English versions (and the ULB) translate this as “verily” or “truly.”
- Another word meaning “truly” is sometimes translated as “surely” or “certainly” and is also used to emphasize what the speaker is saying.

Translation Suggestions:

- Consider whether the target language has a special word or phrase that is used to emphasize something that has been said.
- When used at the end of a prayer or to confirm something, “amen” could be translated as, “let it be so” or “may this happen” or “that is true.”
- When Jesus says, “truly I tell you,” this could also be translated as, “Yes, I tell you sincerely” or “That is true, and I also tell you.”
- The phrase, “truly, truly I tell you” could be translated as “I tell you this very sincerely” or “I tell you this very earnestly” or “what I am telling you is true.”
-

(See: [fulfill](#), [true](#), [truth](#), [come true](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

angel, archangel

Definition:

An angel is a powerful spirit being whom God created. Angels exist to serve God by doing whatever he tells them to do. The term “archangel” refers to the angel who rules or leads all the other angels.

- The word “angel” literally means “messenger.”
- The term “archangel” literally means “chief messenger.” The only angel referred to in the Bible as an “archangel” is Michael.
- In the Bible, angels gave messages to people from God. These messages included instructions about what God wanted the people to do.
- Angels also told people about events that were going to happen in the future or events that had already happened.
- Angels have God’s authority as his representatives and sometimes in the Bible they spoke as if God himself was speaking.
- Other ways that angels serve God is by protecting and strengthening people.
- A special phrase, “angel of Yahweh” has more than one possible meaning: 1) It may mean “angel who represents Yahweh” or “messenger who serves Yahweh.” 2) It may refer to Yahweh himself, who looked like an angel as he talked to a person. Either one of these meanings would explain the angel’s use of “I” as if Yahweh himself was talking.

Translation Suggestions:

- Ways to translate “angel” could include, “messenger from God” or “God’s heavenly servant” or “God’s spirit messenger.”
- The term “archangel” could be translated as “chief angel” or “head ruling angel” or “leader of the angels.”
- Also consider how these terms are translated in a national language or another local language.
- The phrase “angel of Yahweh” should be translated using the words for “angel” and “Yahweh.” This will allow for different interpretations of that phrase. Possible translations could include, “angel from Yahweh” or “angel sent by Yahweh” or “Yahweh who looked like an angel.”

(See: [How to Translate Unknowns](#))

(See also: [chief](#), [head](#), [messenger](#), [Michael](#), [ruler](#), [rulers](#), [rule](#), [servant](#), [slave](#), [slavery](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- [02-12] God placed large, powerful **angels** at the entrance to the garden to keep anyone from eating the fruit of the tree of life.
- [22-03] The **angel** responded to Zechariah, “I was sent by God to bring you this good news.”
- [23-06] Suddenly, a shining **angel** appeared to them (the shepherds), and they were terrified. The **angel** said, “Do not be afraid, because I have some good news for you.”
- [23-07] Suddenly, the skies were filled with **angels** praising God...
- [25-08] Then **angels** came and took care of Jesus.
- [38-12] Jesus was very troubled and his sweat was like drops of blood. God sent an **angel** to strengthen him.
- [38-15] “I could ask the Father for an army of **angels** to defend me.”

apostle, apostleship

Definition:

The “apostles” were men sent by Jesus to preach about God and his kingdom. The term “apostleship” refers to the position and authority of those who were chosen as apostles.

- The word “apostle” means, “someone who is sent out for a special purpose.” The apostle has the same authority as the one who sent him.
- Jesus’ twelve closest disciples became the first apostles. Other men, such as Paul and James, also became apostles.
- By God’s power, the apostles were able to boldly preach the gospel and heal people, including forcing demons to come out of people.

Translation Suggestions:

- The word “apostle” can also be translated with a word or phrase that means, “someone who is sent out” or “sent out one” or “person who is called to go out and preach God’s message to people.”
- It is important to translate the terms “apostle” and “disciple” in different ways from each other.
- Also consider how this term was translated in a Bible translation in a local or national language. (See [How to Translate Unknowns](#))

(See also: [authority](#), [disciple](#), [James \(son of Zebedee\)](#), [Paul](#), [Saul](#), [the twelve](#), [the eleven](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[26-10]** Then Jesus chose twelve men who were called his **apostles**. The **apostles** traveled with Jesus and learned from him.
- **[30-01]** Jesus sent his **apostles** to preach and to teach people in many different villages.
- **[38-02]** Judas was one of Jesus’ **apostles**. He was in charge of the **apostles’** money bag, but he loved money and often stole from the bag.
- **[43-13]** The disciples devoted themselves to the **apostles’** teaching, fellowship, eating together, and prayer.
- **[46-08]** Then a believer named Barnabas took Saul to the **apostles** and told them how Saul had preached boldly in Damascus.

authority

Definition:

The term “authority” refers to the power of influence and control that someone has over someone else.

- Kings and other governing rulers have authority over the people they are ruling.
- The word “authorities” refers to people, governments, or organizations that have authority over others.
- Masters have authority over their servants or slaves. Parents have authority over their children.
- Governments have the authority or right to make laws that govern their citizens.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “authority” can also be translated as “control” or “right” or “qualifications.”
- Sometimes “authority” is used with the meaning of “power.”
- When “authorities” is used to refer to people or organizations who rule people, it could also be translated as “leaders” or “rulers” or “powers.”
- The phrase “by his own authority” could also be translated as, “with his own right to lead” or “based on his own qualifications.”
- The expression, “under authority” could be translated as, “responsible to obey” or “having to obey others’ commands.”

(See also: [citizen](#), [command](#), [to command](#), [commandment](#), [obey](#), [obedient](#), [obedience](#), [power](#), [powers](#), [ruler](#), [rulers](#), [rule](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

believe, believe in, belief

Definition:

The terms “believe” and “believe in” are closely related, but have slightly different meanings:

1. believe

- To believe something is to accept or trust that it is true.
- To believe someone is to acknowledge that what that person has said is true.

2. believe in

- To “believe in” someone means to “trust in” that person. It means to trust that the person is who he says he is, that he always speaks the truth, and that he will do what he has promised to do.
- When a person truly believes in something, he will act in such a way that shows that belief.
- The phrase “have faith in” usually has the same meaning as “believe in.”
- To “believe in Jesus” means to believe that he is the Son of God, that he is God himself who also became human and who died as a sacrifice to pay for our sins. It means to trust him as Savior and live in a way that honors him.

Translation Suggestions:

- To “believe” could be translated as to “know to be true” or “know to be right.”
- To “believe in” could be translated as, “trust completely” or “trust and obey” or “completely rely on and follow.”

(See also: [faith](#), [believer](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- [03-04] Noah warned the people about the coming flood and told them to turn to God, but they did not **believe** him.
- [04-08] Abram **believed** God’s promise. God declared that Abram was righteous because he **believed** God’s promise.
- [11-02] God provided a way to save the firstborn of anyone who **believed in** him.
- [11-06] But the Egyptians did not **believe** God or obey his commands.
- [37-05] Jesus replied, “I am the Resurrection and the Life. Whoever **believes in** me will live, even though he dies. Everyone who **believes in** me will never die. Do you **believe** this?”

believer

Definition:

In the Bible, the term “believer” refers to someone who believes in and relies on Jesus Christ as Savior.

- The term “believer” literally means “person who believes.”
- The term “Christian” eventually came to be the main title for believers because it indicates that they believe in Christ and obey his teachings.

Translation Suggestions:

- Some translations may prefer to say, “believer in Jesus” or “believer in Christ.”
- This term could also be translated by a word or phrase that means, “person who trusts in Jesus” or “someone who knows Jesus and lives for him.”
- Other ways to translate “believer” could be, “follower of Jesus” or “person who knows and obeys Jesus.”
- The term “believer” is a general term for any believer in Christ, while “disciple” and “apostle” were used more specifically for people who knew Jesus while he was alive. It is best to translate these terms in different ways, in order to keep them distinct.

(See also: [apostle](#), [apostleship](#), [believe](#), [believe in](#), [Christian](#), [disciple](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[43-01]** After Jesus returned to heaven, the disciples stayed in Jerusalem as Jesus had commanded them to do. The **believers** there constantly gathered together to pray.
- **[43-03]** While the **believers** were all together, suddenly the house where they were was filled with a sound like a strong wind. Then something that looked like flames of fire appeared over the heads of all the **believers**.
- **[43-13]** Every day, more people became **believers**.
- **[45-06]** That day many people in Jerusalem started persecuting the followers of Jesus, so the **believers** fled to other places. But in spite of this, they preached about Jesus everywhere they went.
- **[46-01]** Saul was the young man who guarded the robes of the men who killed Stephen. He did not believe in Jesus, so he persecuted the **believers**.
- **[46-09]** Some **believers** who fled from the persecution in Jerusalem went far away to the city of Antioch and preached about Jesus...It was at Antioch that **believers** in Jesus were first called “Christians.”

- [47-14] They also wrote many letters to encourage and teach the **believers** in the churches.

blameless

Definition:

The term “blameless” literally means “without blame.” It is used to refer to a person who obeys God wholeheartedly, but it does not mean that the person is sinless.

- Abraham and Noah were considered blameless before God.
- A person who has a reputation for being “blameless” behaves in a way that honors God.
- According to one verse, a person who is blameless is “one who fears God and turns away from evil.”

Translation Suggestions:

- This could also be translated as, “with no fault to his character” or “completely obedient to God” or “avoiding sin” or “keeping away from evil.”

Bible References:

Waiting

blasphemy, blaspheme, blasphemous

Definition:

In the Bible, the term “blasphemy” refers to speaking in a way that shows a deep disrespect for God or people. To “blaspheme” someone is to speak against that person so that others think something false or bad about him.

- Most often, to blaspheme God means to slander or insult him by saying things that are not true about him or by behaving in an immoral way that dishonors him.
- It is blasphemy for a human being to claim to be God or to claim that there is a God other than the one true God.
- Some English versions translate this term as “slander” when it refers to blaspheming people.

Translation Suggestions:

- To “blaspheme” can be translated as, to “say evil things against” or to “dishonor God” or to “slander.”
- Ways to translate “blasphemy” could include, “speaking wrongly about others” or “slander” or “spreading false rumors.”

(See also: [dishonor](#), [dishonorable](#), [slander](#), [slanderer](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

ble**ss**, ble**ss**ed, ble**ss**ing

Definition:

To “bless” someone or something means to cause good and beneficial things to happen to the person or thing that is being blessed.

- Blessing someone also means expressing a desire for positive and beneficial things to happen to that person.
- In Bible times, a father would often pronounce a formal blessing on his children.
- When people ‘bless’ God or express a desire that God be blessed, this means they are praising him.
- The term “bless” is sometimes used for consecrating food before it is eaten, or for thanking and praising God for the food.

from comment below: It is important to not define, focus on, or be confined by applications of the root word of “bless” that suggest primarily the flourishing or abundance of material things or physical wellness. Consider the extensive teachings in Scripture on God’s love, mercy and grace that is not only ancient, but current. Consider care, protection, and presence of God’s Spirit. And for us to bless God, we can offer thankfulness, appreciation, and understanding as we learn of and follow (obey) him.

Translation Suggestions:

- To “bless” could also be translated as, “to provide abundantly for” or “to be very kind and favorable toward.”
- “God has brought great blessing to” could be translated as, “God has given many good things to” or “God has provided abundantly for” or “God has caused many good things to happen to”.
- “He is blessed” could be translated as “he will greatly benefit” or “he will experience good things” or “God will cause him to flourish.”
- “Blessed is the person who” could be translated as “How good it is for the person who.”
- Expressions like, “blessed be the Lord” could be translated as, “May the Lord be praised” or “Praise the Lord” or “I praise the Lord.”
- In the context of blessing food, this could be translated as, “thanked God for the food” or “praised God for giving them food” or “consecrated the food by praising God for it.”

(See also: [praise](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[01-07]** God saw that it was good and he **blessed** them.
- **[01-15]** God made Adam and Eve in his own image. He **blessed** them and told them, “Have many children and grandchildren and fill the earth.”
- **[01-16]** So God rested from all he had been doing. He **blessed** the seventh day and made it holy, because on this day he rested from his work.
- **[04-04]** “I will make your name great. I will **bless** those who **bless** you and curse those who curse you. All families on earth will be **blessed** because of you.”
- **[04-07]** Melchizedek **blessed** Abram and said, “May God Most High who owns heaven and earth **bless** Abram.”
- **[07-03]** Isaac wanted to give his **blessing** to Esau.
- **[08-05]** Even in prison, Joseph remained faithful to God, and God **blessed** him.

brother

Definition:

The term “brother” usually refers to a male person who shares at least one biological parent with another person.

- In the Old Testament, the term “brothers” is also used as a general reference to relatives, such as members of the same tribe, clan, or people group.
- In the New Testament, the apostles often used “brothers” to refer to fellow Christians, including both men and women, since all believers in Christ are members of one spiritual family, with God as their heavenly Father.
- A few times in the New Testament, the apostles used the term “sister” when referring specifically to a fellow Christian who was a woman, or to emphasize that both men and women are being included. For example, James emphasizes that he is talking about all believers when he refers to “a brother or sister who is in need of food or clothing.”

Translation Suggestions:

- It is best to translate this term with the literal word that is used in the target language to refer to a natural or biological brother, unless this would give wrong meaning.
- In the Old Testament especially, when “brothers” is used very generally to refer to members of the same family, clan, or people group, possible translations could include, “relatives” or “clan members” or “fellow Israelites.”
- In the context of referring to a fellow believer in Christ, this term could be translated as, “brother in Christ” or “spiritual brother.”
- If both males and females are being referred to and “brother” would give a wrong meaning, then a more general kinship term could be used that would include both males and females.
- Other ways to translate this term so that it refers to both male and female believers could be, “fellow believers” or “Christian brothers and sisters.”
- Make sure to check the context to determine whether only men are being referred to, or whether both men and women are included.

(See also: [apostle](#), [the twelve](#), [the eleven](#), [God the Father](#), [Heavenly Father](#), [sister](#), [spirit](#), [spiritual](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

call, calling, called, call out

Definition:

The terms “call” and “call out” literally means to say something loudly to someone who is not nearby. There are also several figurative meanings.

- To “call out” to someone means to shout or speak loudly to someone far away. It can also mean to ask someone for help, especially God.
- Often in the Bible, “call” has a meaning of “summon” or “command to come” or “request to come.”
- God calls people to come to him and be his people. This is their “calling.”
- The term “called” is used in the Bible to mean that God has appointed or chosen people to be his children, to be his servants and proclaimers of his message of salvation through Jesus.
- This term is also used in the context of calling someone a name. For example, “He is called John,” means, “He is named John” or “His name is John.”
- To be “called by the name of” means that someone is given the name of someone else. God says that he has called his people by his name.
- A different expression, “I have called you by name” means that God knows a person’s name personally and has specifically chosen him.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “call” could be translated by a word that means “summon,” which includes the idea of being intentional or purposeful in calling.
- The expression “call out to you” could be translated as “ask you for help” or “pray to you urgently.”
- When the Bible says that God has “called” us to be his servants, this could be translated as, “specially chose us” or “appointed us” to be his servants.
- “You must call his name” can also be translated as, “you must name him.”
- “His name is called” could also be translated as, “his name is” or “he is named.”
- To “call out” could be translated as, “say loudly” or “shout” or “say with a loud voice.” Make sure the translation of this does not sound like the person is angry.
- The expression “your calling” could be translated as “your purpose” or “God’s purpose for you” or “God’s special work for you.”
- To “call on the name of the Lord” could be translated as “seek the Lord and depend on him” or “trust in the Lord and obey him.”
- To “call for” something could be translated by “demand” or “ask for” or “command.”
- The expression “you are called by my name” could be translated as, “I have given you my name, showing that you belong to me.”
- When God says, “I have called you by name,” this could be translated as, “I know your name and have chosen you.”

(See: [pray, prayer](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

{{tag>publish ktlink}}

Christ, Messiah

Facts:

The terms “Messiah” and “Christ” mean “Anointed One” and refer to Jesus, God’s Son.

- Both “Messiah” and “Christ” are used in the New Testament to refer to God’s Son, whom God the Father appointed to rule as king over his people, and to save them from sin and death.
- In the Old Testament, the prophets wrote prophecies about the Messiah hundreds of years before he came to earth.
- Often a word meaning “anointed (one)” is used in the Old Testament to refer to the Messiah who would come.
- Jesus fulfilled many of these prophecies and did many miraculous works that proved he is the Messiah; the rest of these prophecies will be fulfilled when he returns.
- The word “Christ” is often used as a title, as in “the Christ” and “Christ Jesus.”
- “Christ” also came to be used as part of his name, as in “Jesus Christ.”

Translation Suggestions:

- This term could be translated using its meaning, “the Anointed One” or “God’s Anointed Savior.”
- Many languages use a transliterated word that looks or sounds like “Christ” or “Messiah.” (See: [How to Translate Unknowns](#))
- The transliterated word could be followed by the definition of the term as in, “Christ, the Anointed One.”
- Be consistent in how this is translated throughout the Bible so that it is clear that the same term is being referred to.
- Make sure the translations of “Messiah” and “Christ” work well in contexts where both terms occur in the same verse (such as John 1:41).

(See: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Son of God](#), [the Son](#), [Son](#), [David](#), [Jesus](#), [Jesus Christ](#), [Christ Jesus](#), [anoint](#), [anointed](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[17-07]** The **Messiah** was God’s Chosen One who would save the people of the world from sin.
- **[17-08]** As it happened, the Israelites would have to wait a long time before the **Messiah** came, almost 1,000 years.

- [21-01] From the very beginning, God planned to send the **Messiah**.
- [21-04] God promised King David that the **Messiah** would be one of David's own descendants.
- [21-05] The **Messiah** would start the New Covenant.
- [21-06] God's prophets also said that the **Messiah** would be a prophet, a priest, and a king.
- [21-09] The prophet Isaiah prophesied that the **Messiah** would be born from a virgin.
- [43-07] "But God raised him to life again to fulfill the prophecy which says, "You will not let your **Holy One** rot in the grave."
- [43-09] "But know for certain that God has caused Jesus to become both Lord and **Messiah!**"
- [43-11] Peter answered them, "Every one of you should repent and be baptized in the name of Jesus **Christ** so that God will forgive your sins."
- [46-06] Saul reasoned with the Jews, proving that Jesus was the **Messiah**.

church, Church

Definition:

In the New Testament, the term “church” refers to a local group of believers in Jesus who regularly met together to pray and hear God’s word preached. The term “the Church” often refers to all Christians.

- This term literally refers to a “called out” assembly or congregation of people who meet together for a special purpose.
- When this term is used to refer to all believers everywhere in the whole body of Christ, some Bible translations capitalize the first letter (“Church”) to distinguish it from the local church.
- Often the believers in a particular city would meet together in someone’s home. These local churches were given the name of the city such as the “church at Ephesus.”
- In the Bible, “church” does not refer to a building.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “church” could be translated as a “gathering together” or “assembly” or “congregation” or “ones who meet together.”
- The word or phrase that is used to translate this term should also be able to refer to all believers, not just one small group.
- Make sure that the translation of “church” does not just refer to a building.
- The term used to translate “assembly” in the Old Testament could also be used to translate this term.
- Also consider how it is translated in a local or national Bible translation. (See: [How to Translate Unknowns](#).)

(See also: [assembly](#), [assemble](#), [believer](#), [Christian](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[43-12]** About 3,000 people believed what Peter said and became disciples of Jesus. They were baptized and became part of the **church** at Jerusalem.
- **[46-09]** Most of the people in Antioch were not Jews, but for the first time, very many of them also became believers. Barnabas and Saul went there to teach these new believers more about Jesus and to strengthen the **church**.
- **[46-10]** So the **church** in Antioch prayed for Barnabas and Saul and placed their hands on them. Then they sent them off to preach the good news of Jesus in many other places.

- [47-13] The good news of Jesus kept spreading, and the **Church** kept growing.
- [50-01] For almost 2,000 years, more and more people around the world have been hearing the good news about Jesus the Messiah. The **Church** has been growing.

command, to command, commandment

Definition:

The term “to command” means to order someone to do something. A “command” or “commandment” is what the person was ordered to do.

- Although these terms have basically the same meaning, “commandment” often refers to certain commands of God which are more formal and permanent, such as the “Ten Commandments.”
- A command can be positive (“Honor your parents”) or negative (“Do not steal”).
- To “take command” means to “take control” or “take charge” of something or someone.

Translation Suggestions

- It is best to translate this term differently from the term, “law.” Also compare with the definitions of “decree” and “statute.”
- Some translators may prefer to translate “command” and “commandment” with the same word in their language.
- Others may prefer to use a special word for commandment that refers to lasting, formal commands that God has made.

(See [decree](#), [statute](#), [statutes](#), [law](#), [principle](#), [Ten Commandments](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

condemn, condemnation

Definition:

The terms “condemn” and “condemnation” refer to judging someone for doing something wrong.

- Often the word “condemn” includes punishing that person for what they did wrong.
- Sometimes “condemn” means to falsely accuse someone or to judge someone harshly.
- The term “condemnation” refers to the act of condemning or accusing someone.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, this term could be translated as “harshly judge” or “criticize falsely.”
- The phrase “condemn him” could be translated as, “judge that he is guilty” or “state that he must be punished for his sin.”
- The term “condemnation” could be translated as, “harsh judging” or “declaring to be guilty” or “punishment of guilt.”

(See also: [judge](#), [judgment](#), [punish](#), [punishment](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

confidence, confident

Definition:

The term “confidence” refers to being sure that something is true or certain to happen.

- In the Bible, the term “hope” often means to wait expectantly for something that is sure to happen. The ULB often translates this as “confidence” or “confidence for the future” or “future confidence” especially when it means to be assured of receiving what God has promised to believers in Jesus.
- Often the term “confidence” refers especially to the certainty that believers in Jesus have that they will someday be with God forever in heaven.
- The phrase, “have confidence in God” means to fully expect to receive and experience what God has promised.
- Being “confident” means believing in God’s promises and acting with the assurance that God will do what he has said. This term can also have the meaning of acting boldly and courageously.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “confident” could be translated as “assured” or “very sure.”
- The phrase “be confident” could also be translated as “trust completely” or “be completely sure about” or “know for certain.”
- The term “confidently” could also be translated as “boldly” or “with certainty.”
- Depending on the context, ways to translate “confidence” could include, “complete assurance” or “sure expectation” or “certainty.”

(See also: [believe](#), [believe in](#), [belief](#), [believer](#), [bold](#), [boldly](#), [boldness](#), [faithful](#), [faithfulness](#), [hope](#), [trust](#), [trustworthy](#), [trustworthiness](#))

Bible References:

- 1 John 03:19-22
- 1 Peter 03:15-17
- Job 04:4-6
- Philippians 01:25-27
- Proverbs 14:26-27
- Romans 05:1-2

conscience

Definition:

The conscience is the part of a person's thinking through which God makes him aware that he is doing something sinful.

- God gave people a conscience to help them know the difference between what is right and what is wrong.
- A person who obeys God is said to have a "pure" or "clear" or "clean" conscience.
- If a person has a "clear conscience" it means that he is not hiding any sin.
- If someone ignores their conscience and no longer feels guilty when he sins, this means his conscience is no longer sensitive to what is wrong. The Bible calls this a "seared" conscience, one that is "branded" as if with a hot iron. Such a conscience is also called "insensitive" and "polluted."
- Possible ways to translate this term could include, "inner moral guide" or "moral thinking."

Bible References:

Waiting

deacon

Definition:

A deacon is a person who serves in the local church, helping fellow believers with practical needs, such as food or money.

- The word “deacon” is taken directly from a Greek word meaning “servant” or “minister.”
- From the time of the early Christians, being a deacon has been a well-defined role and ministry in the Church body.
- For example, in the New Testament, deacons would make sure that whatever money or food that the believers shared would be distributed fairly to the widows among them.
- The term “deacon” could also be translated as, “church minister” or “church worker” or “church servant,” or some other phrase that shows that the person has been formally appointed to do specific tasks that benefit the local Christian community.

(See also: [minister](#), [ministry](#), [servant](#), [slave](#), [slavery](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

death, die, dead

Definition:

This term is used to refer to both physical and spiritual death. Physically, it refers to when the physical body of a person stops living. Spiritually, it refers to sinners being separated from a holy God because of their sin.

1. Physical death

- To “die” means to stop living. Death is the end of physical life.
- A person’s spirit leaves his body when he dies.
- When Adam and Eve sinned, physical death came into the world.
- The expression “put to death” refers to killing or murdering someone, especially when a king or other ruler gives an order for someone to be killed.

2. Spiritual death

- Spiritual death is the separation of a person from God.
- Adam died spiritually when he disobeyed God. His relationship with God was broken. He became ashamed and tried to hide from God.
- Every descendant of Adam is a sinner, and is spiritually dead. God makes us spiritually alive again when we have faith in Jesus Christ.

Translation Suggestions:

- To translate this term, it is best to use the everyday, natural word or expression that refers to death in the target language.
- In some languages, “to die” may be expressed as “to not live.” The term “dead” may be translated as “not alive” or “not having any life” or “not living.”
- Many languages use figurative expressions to describe death, such as “to pass away” in English. However in the Bible it is best to use the most direct term for death that is used in everyday language.
- In the Bible, physical life and death are often compared to spiritual life and death. It is important in a translation to use the same word or phrase for both physical death and spiritual death.
- In some languages it may be more clear to say “spiritual death” when the context requires that meaning. Some translators may also feel it is best to say “physical death” in contexts where it is being contrasted to spiritual death.
- The expression, “the dead” is a nominal adjective that refers to people who have died. Some languages will translate this as, “dead people” or “people who have died.” (See: nominal adjective)
- The expression, “put to death” could also be translated as, “kill” or “murder” or “execute.”

(See also: [believe](#), [believe in](#), [belief](#), [faith](#), [life](#), [live](#), [living](#), [alive](#), [spirit](#), [spiritual](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[01-11]** God told Adam that he could eat from any tree in the garden except from the tree of the knowledge of good and evil. If he ate from this tree, he would **die**.
- **[02-11]** "Then you will **die**, and your body will return to dirt."
- **[07-10]** Then Isaac **died**, and Jacob and Esau buried him.
- **[37-05]** "Jesus replied, "I am the Resurrection and the Life. Whoever believes in me will live, even though he **dies**. Everyone who believes in me will never **die**."
- **[40-08]** Through his **death**, Jesus opened a way for people to come to God.
- **[43-07]** "Although Jesus **died**, God raised him from the dead."
- **[48-02]** Because they sinned, everyone on earth gets sick and everyone **dies**.
- **[50-17]** He (Jesus) will wipe away every tear and there will be no more suffering, sadness, crying, evil, pain, or **death**.
-

deceive, deceit, deception, deceptive

Definition:

The term “deceive” means to cause someone to believe something that is not true. The act of deceiving someone is called “deceit.”

- Another term, “deception” also refers to the act of causing someone to believe something that is not true.
- Someone who causes others to believe something false is a “deceiver.” For example, Satan is called a “deceiver.” The evil spirits that he controls are also deceivers.
- A person, action, or message that is not truthful can be described as “deceptive.”
- The terms “deceit” and “deception” have the same meaning, but there are some small differences in how they are used.
- The descriptive terms, “deceitful” and “deceptive” have the same meaning and are used in the same contexts.

Translation Suggestions:

- Other ways to translate “deceive” could include “lie to” or “cause to have a false belief” or “cause someone to think something that is not true.”
- The term “deceived” could also be translated as, “caused to think something false” or “lied to” or “tricked” or “fooled” or “misled.”
- “Deceiver” could be translated as, “liar” or “one who misleads” or “someone who deceives.”
- Depending on the context, the terms “deception” or “deceit” could be translated with a word or phrase that means “falsehood” or “lying” or “trickery” or “dishonesty.”
- The terms “deceptive” or “deceitful” could be translated by “untruthful” or “misleading” or “lying” to describe a person who speaks or acts in a way that causes other people to believe things that are not true.

(See: [true](#), [truth](#), [come true](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

{{tag>publish review}}

declare, declaration

Definition:

The terms “declare” and “declaration” refer to making a formal or public statement, often to emphasize something.

- A “declaration” not only emphasizes the importance of what is being proclaimed, but it also calls attention to the one making the declaration.
- For example, in the Old Testament, a message from God is often preceded by, “the declaration of Yahweh” or “this is what Yahweh declares.” This expression emphasizes that it is Yahweh himself who is saying this. The fact that the message comes from Yahweh shows how important that message is.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, “declare” could also be translated as “proclaim” or “publicly state” or “strongly say” or “emphatically state.”
- The term “declaration” could also be translated as, “statement” or “proclamation.”
- The phrase, “this is Yahweh’s declaration” could be translated as, “this is what Yahweh declares” or “this is what Yahweh says.”

(See also: [proclaim](#), [proclamation](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

demon, evil spirit, unclean spirit

Definition:

All these terms refer to demons, which are spirit beings that oppose God's will.

- God created angels to serve him. When the devil rebelled against God, some of the angels also rebelled and were thrown out of heaven. It is believed that demons and evil spirits are these “fallen angels.”
- Sometimes these demons are called “unclean spirits.” The term “unclean” means “impure” or “evil” or “unholy.”
- Because demons serve the devil, they do evil things. Sometimes they live inside people and control them.
- Demons are more powerful than human beings, but not as powerful as God.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “demon” could also be translated as “evil spirit.”
- The term “unclean spirit” could also be translated as “impure spirit” or “corrupt spirit” or “evil spirit.”
- Make sure that the word or phrase used to translate this term is different from the term used to refer to the devil.
- Also consider how the term “demon” is translated in a local or national language. (See: [How to Translate Unknowns](#))

(See also: [demon-possessed](#), [Satan](#), [devil](#), [evil one](#), [idol](#), [idolatrous](#), [false god](#), [foreign god](#), [god](#), [goddess](#), [angel](#), [archangel](#), [evil](#), [wicked](#), [wickedness](#), [unclean](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[26-09]** Many people who had **demons** in them were brought to Jesus. When Jesus commanded them, the **demons** came out of the people, and often shouted, “You are the Son of God!”
- **[32-08]** The **demons** came out of the man and entered the pigs.
- **[47-05]** Finally one day when the slave girl started yelling, Paul turned to her and said to the **demon** that was in her, “In the name of Jesus, come out of her.” Right away the **demon** left her.
- **[49-02]** He (Jesus) walked on water, calmed storms, healed many sick people, drove out **demons**, raised the dead to life, and turned five loaves of bread and two small fish into enough food for over 5,000 people.

disciple

Definition:

The term “disciple” refers to a person who spends much time with a teacher, learning from that teacher’s character and teaching.

- The people who followed Jesus around, listening to his teachings and obeying them, were called his “disciples.”
- John the Baptist also had disciples.
- During Jesus’ ministry, there were many disciples who followed him and heard his teachings.
- Jesus chose twelve disciples to be his closest followers; these men became known as his “apostles.”
- Jesus’ twelve apostles continued to be known as his “disciples” or “the twelve.”
- Just before Jesus went up to heaven, he commanded his disciples to teach other people about how to become Jesus’ disciples, too.
- Anyone who believes in Jesus and obeys his teachings is called a disciple of Jesus.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “disciple” could be translated by a word or phrase that means “follower” or “student” or “pupil” or “learner.”
- Make sure that the translation of this term does not refer only to a student who learns in a classroom.
- The translation of this term should also be different from the translation of “apostle.”

(See also: [apostle](#), [apostleship](#), [believer](#), [Jesus](#), [Jesus Christ](#), [Christ Jesus](#), [John \(the Baptist\)](#), [the twelve](#), [the eleven](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[30-08]** He (Jesus) gave the pieces to his **disciples** to give to the people. The **disciples** kept passing out the food, and it never ran out!
- **[38-01]** About three years after Jesus first began preaching and teaching publicly, Jesus told his **disciples** that he wanted to celebrate this Passover with them in Jerusalem, and that he would be killed there.
- **[38-11]** Then Jesus went with his **disciples** to a place called Gethsemane. Jesus told his **disciples** to pray that they would not enter into temptation.

- **[42-10]** Jesus said to his **disciples**, "All authority in heaven and on earth has been given to me. So go, make **disciples** of all people groups by baptizing them in the name of the Father, the Son, and the Holy Spirit, and by teaching them to obey everything I have commanded you."

discipline, self-discipline

Definition:

The term “discipline” refers to training people to obey a set of guidelines for moral behavior.

- Parents discipline their children by providing moral guidance and direction for them and teaching them to obey.
- Similarly, God disciplines his children to help them produce healthy spiritual fruit in their lives, such as joy, love, and patience.
- Discipline involves instruction regarding how to live to please God, as well as punishment for behavior that is against God’s will.
- Self-discipline is the process of applying moral and spiritual principles to one’s own life.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, “discipline” could be translated as, “train and instruct” or “morally guide” or “punish for wrongdoing.”
- The noun, “discipline” could be translated as “moral training” or “punishment” or “moral correction” or “moral guidance and instruction.”

Bible References:

Waiting

disgrace, disgraceful

Facts:

The term “disgrace” refers to a loss of honor and respect.

- When a person does something sinful, it can cause him to be in a state of disgrace or dishonor.
- The term “disgraceful” is used to describe a sinful act or the person who did it.
- Sometimes a person who is doing good things is treated in a way that causes him disgrace or shame.
- For example, when Jesus was killed on a cross, this was a disgraceful way to die. Jesus had done nothing wrong to deserve this disgrace.
- Ways to translate “disgrace” could include “shame” or “dishonor.”
- Ways to translate “disgraceful” could include “shameful” or dishonoring.”

(See also: [dishonor](#), [dishonorable](#), [honor](#), [to honor](#), [shame](#), [shameful](#), [ashamed](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

doctrine

Definition:

The word “doctrine” literally means “teaching”. It usually refers to religious teaching.

- In the context of Christian teachings, “doctrine” refers to all teachings about God – Father, Son and Holy Spirit – including all his character qualities and everything he has done.
- It also refers to everything God teaches Christians about how to live holy lives that bring glory to him.
- The word “doctrine” is sometimes also used to refer to false or worldly religious teachings that come from human beings. The context makes the meaning clear.
- This term could also be translated as “teaching.”

(See also: [teach](#), [teaching](#), [teacher](#), [taught](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

elder

Definition:

Elders are spiritually mature men who have responsibilities of spiritual and practical leadership among God's people.

- The term "elder" came from the fact that elders were originally older men who, because of their age and experience, had greater wisdom.
- In the Old Testament, the elders helped lead the Israelites in matters of social justice and the Law of Moses.
- In the New Testament, Jewish elders continued to be leaders in their communities and also were judges for the people.
- In the early Christian churches, Christian elders gave spiritual leadership to the local assemblies of believers.
- Elders in these churches included young men who were spiritually mature.
- This term could be translated as "older men" or "spiritually mature men leading the church."

Bible References:

Waiting

endure, endurance

Definition:

The term “endure” means to last a long time or to bear something difficult with patience.

- It also means to stand firm when times of testing come, without giving up.
- The term “endurance” can mean “patience,” “bearing up under a trial,” or “persevering when being persecuted.”
- The encouragement to Christians to “endure to the end” is telling them to obey Jesus, even if this causes them to suffer.
- To “endure suffering” can also mean to “experience suffering.”

Translation Suggestions:

- Ways to translate the term “endure” could include, “persevere” or “keep believing” or “continue to do what God wants you to do” or “stand firm.”
- In some contexts, “to endure” could be translated as, “to experience” or “to go through.”
- With the meaning of lasting for a long time, the term “endure” could also be translated as “last” or “continue.” The phrase, “will not endure” could be translated as, “will not last” or “will not continue to survive.”
- Ways to translate “endurance” could include, “perseverance” or “continuing to believe” or “remaining faithful.”

(See also: [persevere](#), [perseverance](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

envy, covet

Definition:

The term “envy” refers to being jealous of someone because of what that person possesses or because of that person’s admirable qualities. The term “covet” means to envy someone to the point of strongly desiring to have something that person has.

- Envy is normally a negative feeling of resentment because of another person’s success, good fortune, or possessions.
- Coveting is a strong desire to have someone else’s property, or even, someone else’s spouse.

(See also: [jealous](#), [jealousy](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Ephesus

Facts:

Ephesus was an ancient Greek city on the west coast of what is now the present-day country of Turkey.

- During the time of the early Christians, Ephesus was the capital of Asia, which was a small Roman province at that time.
- Because of its location, this city was an important center of trade and travel.
- A well-known pagan temple for the worship of the goddess Artemis (Diana) was located in Ephesus.
- Paul lived and worked in Ephesus for more than two years and later appointed Timothy to lead the new believers there.
- The book of Ephesians in the New Testament is a letter that Paul wrote to the believers in Ephesus.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Asia](#), [Paul](#), [Saul](#), [Timothy](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

everlasting, eternal, eternity

Definition:

The terms “everlasting” and “eternal” have very similar meanings and refer to something that will always exist or that lasts forever.

- The term “eternity” refers to a state of being that has no beginning or end. It can also refer to life that never ends.
- After this present life on earth, humans will spend eternity either in heaven with God or in hell apart from God.
- The terms “eternal life” and “everlasting life” are used in the New Testament to refer to living forever with God in heaven.
- The phrase “forever and ever” has the idea of time that never ends and expresses what eternity or eternal life is like.

Translation Suggestions:

- Other ways to translate “eternal” or “everlasting” could include, “unending” or “never stopping” or “always continuing.”
- The terms “eternal life” and “everlasting life” could also be translated as “life that never ends” or “life that continues without stopping” or “the raising up of our bodies to live forever.”
- Depending on the context, different ways to translate “eternity” could include, “existing outside of time” or “unending life” or “life in heaven.”
- Also consider how this word is translated in a Bible translation in a local or national language. (See: [How to Translate Unknowns](#))

(See also: [forever](#), [life](#), [live](#), [living](#), [alive](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[27-01]** One day, an expert in the Jewish law came to Jesus to test him, saying, “Teacher, what must I do to inherit **eternal life**?”
- **[28-01]** One day, a rich young ruler came up to Jesus and asked him, “Good Teacher, what must I do to have **eternal life**?” Jesus said to him, “Why do you ask me about what is good? There is only One who is good, and that is God. But if you want to have **eternal life**, obey God’s laws.”
- **[28-10]** Jesus answered, “Everyone who has left houses, brothers, sisters, father, mother, children, or property for my name’s sake, will receive 100 times more and will also receive **eternal life**.”

Eve

Facts:

This was the name of the first woman. Her name means “life” or “living.”

- God formed Eve from a rib that he took out of Adam.
- Eve was created to be Adam’s “helper.” She came alongside Adam to assist him in the work that God gave them to do.
- Eve was tempted by Satan (in the form of a snake) and was the first to sin by eating the fruit that God said not to eat.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Adam](#), [life](#), [live](#), [living](#), [alive](#), [Satan](#), [devil](#), [evil one](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[01-13]** Then God took one of Adam’s ribs and made it into a woman and brought her to him.
- **[02-02]** But there was a crafty snake in the garden. He asked the woman, “Did God really tell you not to eat the fruit from any of the trees in the garden?”
- **[02-11]** The man named his wife **Eve**, which means “life-giver,” because she would become the mother of all people.
- **[21-01]** God promised that a descendant of **Eve** would be born who would crush the snake’s head.
- **[48-02]** Satan spoke through the snake in the garden in order to deceive **Eve**.
- **[49-08]** When Adam and **Eve** sinned, it affected all of their descendants.
- **[50-16]** Because Adam and **Eve** disobeyed God and brought sin into this world, God cursed it and decided to destroy it.

evil, wicked, wickedness

Definition:

The terms “evil” and “wicked” both refer to anything that is opposed to God’s holy character and will.

- While “evil” may describe a person’s character, “wicked” may refer more to a person’s behavior. However, both terms are very similar in meaning.
- The term “wickedness” refers to the state of being that exists when people do wicked things.
- The results of evil are clearly shown in how people mistreat others by killing, stealing, slandering or being cruel and unkind.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, the terms “evil” and “wicked” can be translated as “bad” or “sinful” or “immoral”
- Other ways to translate these could include, “not good” or “not righteous” or “not moral.”
- Make sure the words or phrases that are used to translate these terms fit the context that is natural in the target language.

(See also: [disobey](#), [disobedient](#), [sin](#), [sinful](#), [sinner](#), [good](#), [goodness](#), [righteous](#), demon, evil spirit, unclean spirit)

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[02-04]** “God just knows that as soon as you eat it, you will be like God and will understand good and **evil** like he does.”
- **[03-01]** After a long time, many people were living in the world. They had become very **wicked** and violent.
- **[03-02]** But Noah found favor with God. He was a righteous man living among **wicked** people.
- **[04-02]** God saw that if they all kept working together to do **evil**, they could do many more sinful things.
- **[08-12]** “You tried to do **evil** when you sold me as a slave, but God used the **evil** for good!”
- **[14-02]** They (Canaanites) worshiped false gods and did many **evil** things.
- **[17-01]** But then he (Saul) became a **wicked** man who did not obey God, so God chose a different man who would one day be king in his place.
- **[18-11]** In the new kingdom of Israel, all the kings were **evil**.

- [29-08] The king was so angry that he threw the **wicked** servant into prison until he could pay back all of his debt.
- [45-02] They said, "We heard him (Stephen) speak **evil** things about Moses and God!"
- [50-17] He (Jesus) will wipe away every tear and there will be no more suffering, sadness, crying, **evil**, pain, or death.

exhort, exhortation

Definition:

The term “exhort” means to strongly encourage and urge someone to do what is right. Such encouragement is called “exhortation.”

- The purpose of exhortation is to persuade other people to avoid sin and follow God’s will.
- The New Testament teaches Christians to exhort each other in love, not harshly or abruptly.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, “exhort” could also be translated as “strongly urge” or “persuade” or “advise.”
- Make sure the translation of this term does not imply that the exhorter is angry. The term should convey strength and seriousness, but should not refer to angry speech.
- In most contexts, the term “exhort” should be translated differently than “encourage,” which means to inspire, reassure, or comfort someone.
- Usually this term will also be translated differently from “admonish,” which means to warn or correct someone for his wrong behavior.

Bible References:

Waiting

faith

Definition:

In general, the term “faith” refers to a belief, trust or confidence in someone or something.

- To “have faith” in someone is to believe that what he says and does is true and trustworthy.
- To “have faith in Jesus” means to believe all of God’s teachings about Jesus. It especially means that people trust in Jesus and his sacrifice to cleanse them from their sin and to rescue them from the punishment they deserve because of their sin.
- True faith or belief in Jesus will cause a person to produce good spiritual fruits or behaviors because the Holy Spirit is living in him.
- Sometimes “faith” refers generally to all the teachings about Jesus, as in the expression, “the truths of the faith.”
- In contexts such as “keep the faith” or “abandon the faith,” the term “faith” refers to the state or condition of believing all the teachings about Jesus.

Translation Suggestions:

- In some contexts, “faith” can be translated as “belief” or “conviction” or “confidence” or “trust.”
- For some languages these terms will be translated using forms of the verb “believe.” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))
- The expression, “keep the faith” could be translated by, “keep believing in Jesus” or “continue to believe in Jesus.”
- The sentence, “they must keep hold of the deep truths of the faith” could be translated by, “they must keep believing all the true things about Jesus that they have been taught.”
- The expression, “my true son in the faith” could be translated by something like, “who is like a son to me because I taught him to believe in Jesus” or “my true spiritual son, who believes in Jesus.”

(See also: [believe](#), [believe in](#), [belief](#), [faithful](#), [faithfulness](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[05-06]** When Isaac was a young man, God tested Abraham’s **faith** by saying, “Take Isaac, your only son, and kill him as a sacrifice to me.”
- **[31-07]** Then he (Jesus) said to Peter, “You man of little **faith**, why did you doubt?”
- **[32-16]** Jesus said to her, “Your **faith** has healed you. Go in peace.”

- **[38-09]** Then Jesus said to Peter, "Satan wants to have all of you, but I have prayed for you, Peter, that your **faith** will not fail.

faithful, faithfulness

Definition:

To be “faithful” to God means to consistently live according to God’s teachings. It means to be loyal to him by obeying him. The state or condition of being faithful is “faithfulness.”

- A person who is faithful can be trusted to always keep his promises and to always fulfill his responsibilities to other people.
- A faithful person perseveres in doing a task, even when it is long and difficult.
- Faithfulness to God is the consistent practice of doing what God wants us to do.

Translation Suggestions:

- In many contexts, “faithful” can be translated as “loyal” or “dedicated” or “dependable.”
- In other contexts, “faithful” can be translated by a word or phrase that means, “continuing to believe” or “persevering in believing and obeying God.”
- Ways that “faithfulness” could be translated could include, “persevering in believing” or “loyalty” or “trustworthiness” or “believing and obeying God.”

(See also: [faith](#), [believe](#), [believe in](#), [belief](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- [08-05] Even in prison, Joseph remained **faithful** to God, and God blessed him.
- [14-12] Even so, God was still **faithful** to His promises to Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob.
- [15-13] The people promised to remain **faithful** to God and follow his laws.
- [17-09] David ruled with justice and **faithfulness** for many years, and God blessed him. However, toward the end of his life he sinned terribly against God.
- [18-04] God was angry with Solomon and, as a punishment for Solomon’s **unfaithfulness**, he promised to divide the nation of Israel into two kingdoms after Solomon’s death.
- [35-12]”The older son said to his father, ‘All these years I have worked **faithfully** for you!’
- [49-17] But God is **faithful** and says that if you confess your sins, he will forgive you.
- [50-04] If you remain **faithful** to me to the end, then God will save you.”

false witness, corrupt witness, false testimony, false report

Definition:

The terms “false witness” and “corrupt witness” refer to a person who says untrue things about a person or an event, usually in a formal setting such as a court.

- A “false testimony” or “false report” is the actual lie that is told.
- To “bear false witness” means to lie or give a false report about something.
- The Bible gives several accounts in which false witnesses were hired to lie about someone in order to have that person punished or killed.

Translation Suggestions:

- To “bear false witness” or “give a false testimony” could be translated as, “testify falsely” or “give a false report about someone” or “speak falsely against someone” or “lie.”
- When “false witness” refers to a person, it could be translated as “person who lies” or “one who testifies falsely” or “someone who says things that are not true.”

(See also: [testimony](#), [testify](#), [true](#), [truth](#), [come true](#), [witness](#), [eyewitness](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

favor, favorable, favoritism

Definition:

The term “favor” refers to doing something to benefit someone who is regarded positively. Something that is “favorable” is positive, approving, or beneficial.

- The term “favoritism” means to act favorably toward some people but not others. Often favoritism is The term “favoritism” means acting favorably toward some people, but not others. shown toward people who are rich or are considered
- Jesus grew up “in favor with” God and men. This means they approved of his character and behavior.
- The expression “find favor” means that someone is approved of by someone else.
- When a king shows favor to someone, it often means that he approves of that person’s request and grants it.

Translation Suggestions:

- Other ways to translate the term “favor” could include, “blessing” or “benefit.”
- The “favorable year of Yahweh” could be translated as, “the year (or time) when Yahweh will bring great blessing.”
- The term “favoritism” could be translated as, “partiality” or “being prejudiced” or “unjust treatment.” This word is related to the word “favorite” which means “the one who is preferred or loved best.”

“find favor” “increased in favor” “won the favor of”

Bible References:

Waiting

fear, afraid, fear of Yahweh

Definition:

The terms “fear” and “afraid” refer to the unpleasant feeling a person has when there is a threat of harm to himself or others.

- The term “fear” can also refer to a deep respect and awe for a person in authority.
- The phrase “fear of Yahweh,” and related terms “fear of God” and “fear of the Lord,” refer to deeply respecting God and showing that respect by obeying him. This fear is motivated by knowing that God is holy and hates sin.
- The Bible teaches that a person who fears Yahweh will become wise.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, “to fear” can be translated as “to be afraid” or “to deeply respect” or “to revere” or “to be in awe of.”
- The term “afraid” could be translated as “terrified” or “scared” or “fearful.”
- The sentence, “The fear of God fell on all of them” could be translated as, “Suddenly they all felt a deep awe and respect for God” or “Immediately, they all felt very amazed and revered God deeply” or “Right then, they all felt very afraid of God (because of his great power).”
- The phrase “fear not” could also be translated as, “do not be afraid” or “stop being afraid.”
- Note that the phrase “fear of Yahweh” does not occur in the New Testament. The phrase “fear of the Lord” or “fear of the Lord God” would be used instead.

(See also: [marvel](#), [wonder](#), [amazed](#), [astonished](#), [awe](#), [awesome](#), [Lord](#), [power](#), [powers](#), [Yahweh](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

flesh

Definition:

In the Bible, the term “flesh” literally refers to the soft tissue of the physical body of a human being or animal.

- The Bible also uses the term “flesh” in a figurative way to refer to all human beings or all living creatures.
- In the New Testament, the term “flesh” is used to refer to the sinful nature of human beings. This is often used in contrast to their spiritual nature.
- The expression, “own flesh and blood” refers to someone who is biologically related to another person, such as a parent, sibling, child, or grandchild.
- The expression “flesh and blood” can also refer to a person’s ancestors or descendants.
- The expression, “one flesh” refers to the physical uniting of a man and woman in marriage.

Translation Suggestions:

- In the context of an animal’s body, “flesh” could be translated as “body” or “skin” or “meat.”
- When it is used to refer generally to all living creatures, this term could be translated as “living beings” or “everything that is alive.”
- When referring in general to all people, this term could be translated as “people” or “human beings” or “everyone who lives.”
- The expression, “flesh and blood” could also be translated as “relatives” or “family” or “kin-folk” or “family clan.” There may be contexts where it could be translated as “ancestors” or “descendants.”
- Some languages may have an expression that is similar in meaning to “flesh and blood.”
- The expression, “become one flesh” could be translated as, “unite sexually” or “become as one body” or “become like one person in body and spirit.” The translation of this expression should be checked to make sure it is acceptable in the project language and culture. (See: [Euphemism](#)). It should also be understood that this is figurative, and does not mean that the man and woman literally become one person.

Bible References:

Waiting

fool, foolish, folly

Definition:

The term “fool” refers to a person who often makes wrong choices, especially choosing to disobey. The term “foolish” describes a person or behavior that is not wise.

- In the Bible, the term “fool” usually refers to a person who does not believe or obey God. This is often contrasted to the wise person, who trusts in God and obeys God.
- In the Psalms, David describes a fool as a person who does not believe in God, who ignores all the evidence of God in his creation.
- The Old Testament book of Proverbs also gives many descriptions of what a fool, or foolish person, is like.
- The term “folly” refers to an action that is not wise because it is against God’s will. Often “folly” also includes the meaning of something that is ridiculous or dangerous.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “fool” could be translated as, “foolish person” or “unwise person” or “senseless person” or “ungodly person.”
- Ways to translate “foolish” could include, “lacking understanding” or “unwise” or “senseless.”

(See also: [wise](#), [wisdom](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

forever

Definition:

In the Bible, the term “forever” refers to never-ending time. Sometimes it is used figuratively to mean, “a very long time.”

- The term “forever and ever” emphasizes that something will always exist.
- The phrase “forever and ever” is a way of expressing what eternity or eternal life is. It also has the idea of time that never ends.
- God said that David’s throne would last “forever.” This is referring to the fact that David’s descendant Jesus will reign as king forever.

Translation Suggestions:

- This term could also be translated by “always” or “never ending.”
- The phrase, “will last forever” could also be translated as “always exist” or “will never stop” or “will always continue.”
- The emphatic phrase, “forever and ever” could also be translated as, “for always and always” or “not ever ending” or “which never, ever ends.”
- David’s throne lasting forever could be translated as, “David’s descendant will reign forever” or “a descendant of mine will always be reigning.”

(See also: [David](#), [everlasting](#), [eternal](#), [eternity](#), [reign](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

sexual immorality

Definition:

The term “sexual immorality” refers to sexual activity that takes place outside the marriage relationship of a man and a woman. This is against God’s plan. Older English Bible versions call this “fornication.”

- This term can refer to any kind of sexual activity that is against God’s will, including homosexual acts and pornography.
- One type of sexual immorality is adultery, which is sexual activity specifically between a married person and someone who is not that person’s spouse.
- Another type of sexual immorality is “prostitution,” which involves being paid to have sex with someone.
- This term is also used figuratively to refer to Israel’s unfaithfulness to God when they worshiped false gods.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “sexual immorality” could be translated as “immorality” as long as the correct meaning of the term is understood.
- Other ways to translate this term could include, “wrong sexual acts” or “sex outside of marriage.”
- This term should be translated in a different way from the term “adultery.”
- The translation of this term’s figurative uses should retain the literal term if possible since there is a common comparison in the Bible between unfaithfulness to God and unfaithfulness in the sexual relationship.

(See also: [adultery](#), [adulterer](#), [false god](#), [god](#), [prostitute](#), [harlot](#), [unfaithful](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

foundation, founded

Definition:

The verb “founded” means to be built on or based on something. A foundation is the base on which something is built.

- The foundation of a house or building must be strong and dependable in order to support the entire structure.
- The term “foundation” can also refer to the beginning of something or to the time when something was first created.
- In a figurative sense, believers in Christ are compared to a building that is founded on the teachings of the apostles and prophets, with Christ himself being the cornerstone of the building.
- A “foundation stone” was a stone that was laid as part of the foundation. These stones were tested to make sure they were strong enough to support an entire building.

Translation Suggestions:

- The phrase “before the foundation of the world” could be translated as “before the creation of the world” or “before the time when the world first existed” or “before everything was first created.”
- The term “founded on” could be translated as “securely built on” or “firmly based on.”
- Depending on the context, “foundation” could be translated as “strong base” or “solid support” or “beginning” or “creation.”

(See also: [cornerstone](#), [create](#), [creation](#), [Creator](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Gentile

Facts:

The term “Gentile” refers to anyone who is not a Jew. Gentiles are people who are not descendants of Jacob.

- In the Bible, the term “uncircumcised” is also used figuratively to refer to Gentiles because many of them did not circumcise their male children as the Israelites did.
- Because God chose the Jews to be his special people, they thought of the Gentiles as outsiders who could never be God’s people.
- The Jews were also called “Israelites” or “Hebrews” at different times in history. They referred to everyone else as a “Gentile.”
- Gentile could also be translated as “not a Jew” or “non-Jewish” or “not an Israelite” (Old Testament) or “non-Jew.”
- Traditionally, Jews would not eat with Gentiles or associate with them, which at first caused problems within the early church.

(See also: [Israel](#), [Israelites](#), [nation of Israel](#), [Jacob](#), [Israel](#), [Jew](#), [Jewish](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

gift

Definition:

The term “gift” refers to anything that is given or offered to someone. A gift is given without the expectation of getting anything in return

- Money, food, clothing, or other things given to poor people are called “gifts.”
- In the Bible, an offering or sacrifice given to God is also called a gift
- The gift of salvation is something God gives us through faith in Jesus.
- In the New Testament, the term “gifts” is also used to refer to special spiritual abilities that God gives to all Christians for serving other people.

Translation Suggestions:

- The general term for “gift” could be translated with a word or phrase that means “something that is given.”
- In the context of someone having a gift or special ability that comes from God, the term “gift from the Spirit” could be translated as, “spiritual ability” or “special ability from the Holy Spirit” or “special spiritual skill that God gave.”

(See also: [spirit](#), [spiritual](#), [Holy Spirit](#), [Spirit of God](#), [Spirit of the Lord](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

glory, glorious

Definition:

In general, the term “glory” means honor, splendor, and extreme greatness. Anything that has glory is said to be “glorious.”

- Sometimes “glory” refers to something of great value and importance. In other contexts it communicates splendor, brightness, or judgment.
- For example, the expression “glory of the shepherds” refers to the lush pastures where their sheep had plenty of grass to eat.
- Glory is especially used to describe God, who is more glorious than anyone or anything in the universe. Everything in his character reveals his glory and his splendor.
- The expression “to glory in” means to boast about or take pride in something.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, different ways to translate “glory” could include, “splendor” or “brightness” or “majesty” or “awesome greatness” or “extreme value.”
- The term “glorious” could be translated as “full of glory” or “extremely valuable” or “brightly shining” or “awesomely majestic.”
- The expression, “give glory to God” could be translated as “honor God’s greatness” or “praise God because of his splendor” or “tell others how great God is.”
- The expression “glory in” could also be translated as, “praise” or “take pride in” or “boast about” or “take pleasure in.”

(See also: [glorify](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- [23-07] Suddenly, the skies were filled with angels praising God, saying, “**Glory** to God in heaven and peace on earth to the people he favors!”
- [25-06] Then Satan showed Jesus all the kingdoms of the world and all their **glory** and said, “I will give you all this if you bow down and worship me.”
- [37-01] When Jesus heard this news, he said, “This sickness will not end in death, but it is for the **glory** of God.”
- [37-08] Jesus responded, “Did I not tell you that you would see God’s **glory** if you believe in me?”

God

Facts:

In the Bible, the term “God” refers to the eternal being who created the universe out of nothing. God exists as Father, Son, and Holy Spirit. God’s personal name is “Yahweh.”

- God has always existed; he existed before anything else existed, and he will continue to exist forever.
- He is the only true God and has authority over everything in the universe.
- God is perfectly righteous, infinitely wise, holy, sinless, just, merciful, and loving.
- He is a covenant-keeping God, who always fulfills his promises.
- People were created to worship God and he is the only one they should worship.
- God revealed his name as “Yahweh” which means, “he is” or “I am” or “the One who (always) exists.”
- The Bible also teaches about false “gods” which are nonliving idols that people wrongly worship.

Translation Suggestions:

- Ways to translate “God” could include, “Deity” or “Creator” or “Supreme Being.”
- Other ways to translate “God” could be, “Supreme Creator” or “Infinite Sovereign Lord” or “Eternal Supreme Being.”
- Consider how God is referred to in a local or national language. There may also already be a word for “God” in the language being translated. If so, it is important to make sure that this word fits the characteristics of the one true God as described above.
- Many languages capitalize the first letter of the word for the one true God, to distinguish it from the word for a false god.
- Another way to make this distinction would be to use two different terms for “God” and “god.”
- The phrase, “I will be their God and they will be my people” could also be translated as, “I, God, will rule over these people and they will worship me.”

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [create](#), [creation](#), [Creator](#), [false god](#), [god](#), [God the Father](#), [Heavenly Father](#), [Holy Spirit](#), [Spirit of God](#), [Spirit of the Lord](#), [idol](#), [Son of God](#), [the Son](#), [Yahweh](#),)

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- [01-01]**God** created the universe and everything in it in six days.
- [01-15]**God** made man and woman in his own image.
- [05-03]"I am **God** Almighty. I will make a covenant with you."
- [09-14]**God** said, "I AM WHO I AM. Tell them, 'I AM has sent me to you.' Also tell them, 'I am Yahweh, the **God** of your ancestors Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob. This is my name forever.'"
- [10-02] Through these plagues, **God** showed Pharaoh that he is more powerful than Pharaoh and all of Egypt's gods.
- [16-01] The Israelites began to worship the Canaanite gods instead of Yahweh, the true **God**.
- [22-07] You, my son, will be called the prophet of the **Most High God** who will prepare the people to receive the Messiah!"
- [24-09] There is only one **God**. But John heard **God** the Father speak, and saw Jesus the Son and the Holy Spirit when he baptized Jesus.
- [25-07]"Worship only the Lord your **God** and only serve him."
- [28-01]"There is only one who is good, and that is **God**."
- [49-09] But **God** loved everyone in the world so much that he gave his only Son so that whoever believes in Jesus will not be punished for his sins, but will live with **God** forever.
- [50-16] But some day **God** will create a new heaven and a new earth that will be perfect.

godly, godliness

Definition:

The term “godly” is used to describe a person who acts in a way that honors God and shows what God is like. “Godliness” is the character quality of honoring God by doing his will.

- A person who has godly character will show the fruits of the Holy Spirit, such as love, joy, peace, patience, kindness, and self control.
- The quality of godliness shows that a person has the Holy Spirit and is obeying him.

Translation Suggestions:

- The phrase, “the godly” could be translated as, “godly people” or “people who obey God.” (See: [Nominal Adjectives](#))
- The adjective “godly” could be translated as “obedient to God” or “righteous” or “pleasing to God.”
- The phrase, “in a godly manner” could be translated as, “in a way that obeys God” or “with actions and words that please God.”
- Ways to translate “godliness” could include, “acting in a way that pleases God” or “obeying God” or “living in a righteous manner.”

(See also [honor](#), [to honor](#), [obey](#), [obedient](#), [obedience](#), [righteous](#), [righteousness](#), [ungodly](#), [godless](#), [ungodliness](#), [godlessness](#), [unrighteous](#), [unrighteousness](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

God the Father, heavenly Father, Father

Facts:

The terms, “God the Father” and “heavenly Father” refer to Yahweh, the one true God. This term also occurs as “Father,” especially when Jesus is referring to him.

- God exists as God the Father, God the Son, and God the Holy Spirit. Each one is fully God, and yet they are only one God. This is a mystery that mere humans cannot fully understand.
- God the Father sent God the Son (Jesus) into the world and he sends the Holy Spirit to his people.
- Anyone who believes in God the Son becomes a child of God the Father, and God the Holy Spirit comes to live in that person. This is another mystery that human beings cannot fully understand.

Translation Suggestions:

- In the phrase “God the Father,” it is best to translate “Father” with the same word that the language naturally uses to refer to a human father.
- The term “heavenly Father” could be translated by “Father who lives in heaven” or “Father God who lives in heaven” or “God our Father from heaven.”
- Usually “Father” is capitalized, to show that this refers to God.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [father](#), [forefather](#), [God](#), [heaven](#), [sky](#), [heavens](#), [heavenly](#), [Holy Spirit](#), [Spirit of God](#), [Spirit of the Lord](#), [Jesus](#), [Jesus Christ](#), [Christ Jesus](#), [Son of God](#), [the Son](#), [Son](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- [24-09] There is only one God. But John heard **God the Father** speak, and saw Jesus the Son and the Holy Spirit when he baptized Jesus.
- [29-09] Then Jesus said, “This is what my **heavenly Father** will do to every one of you if you do not forgive your brother from your heart.”
- [37-09] Then Jesus looked up to heaven and said, “**Father**, thank you for hearing me.”
- [40-07] Then Jesus cried out, “It is finished! **Father**, I give my spirit into your hands.”
- [42-10] “So go, make disciples of all people groups by baptizing them in the name of **the Father**, the Son, and the Holy Spirit and by teaching them to obey everything I have commanded you.”
- [43-08] “Jesus is now exalted to the right hand of **God the Father**.”

- **[50-10]**”Then the righteous ones will shine like the sun in the kingdom of **God their Father.**”

gold

Definition:

Gold is a yellow-colored high-quality metal that was used for making jewelry and religious objects. It was the most valuable metal in ancient times.

- In Bible times, many different kinds of objects were made out of solid gold or were covered with a thin layer of gold.
- These objects included ear rings and other jewelry, idols, altars, and other objects used in the tabernacle or temple, such as the ark of the covenant.
- In Old Testament times, gold was used as a means of exchange in buying and selling. It was weighed on a scale to determine its value.
- Later on, gold and other metals such as silver were used to make coins to use in buying and selling
- When referring to something that is not solid gold, but only has a thin covering of gold, the term “golden” or “gold-covered” or “gold-overlaid” could also be used.
- Sometimes an object is described as “gold-colored” which means it has the yellow color of gold, but may not actually be made of gold.

(See also: [altar](#), [ark of the covenant](#), [ark of the covenant decrees](#), [ark of Yahweh](#), [false god](#), [foreign god](#), [god](#), [goddess](#), [silver](#), [tabernacle](#), [temple](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

good, goodness

Definition:

The word “good” has different meanings depending on the context. Many languages will use different words to translate these different meanings.

- In general, something is good if it fits with God’s character, purposes, and will.
- Something that is “good” could be pleasing, excellent, helpful, suitable, profitable, or morally right.
- Land that is “good” could be called “fertile” or “productive.”
- A “good” crop could be a “plentiful” crop.
- A person can be “good” at what they do if they are skillful at their task or profession, as in, “a good farmer.”
- In the Bible, the general meaning of “good” is often contrasted with “evil.”
- The term “goodness” usually refers to being morally good or righteous in thoughts and actions.
- The goodness of God refers to how he blesses people by giving them good and beneficial things. It also can refer to his moral perfection.

Translation Suggestions:

- The general term for “good” in the target language should be used wherever this general meaning is accurate and natural, especially in contexts where it is contrasted to evil.
- Depending on the context, other ways to translate this term could include, “kind” or “excellent” or “pleasing to God” or “righteous” or “morally upright” or “profitable.”
- “Good land” could be translated as, “fertile land” or “productive land”; a “good crop” could be translated as a “plentiful harvest” or “large amount of crops.”
- The phrase “do good to” means to do something that benefits others and could be translated as “be kind to” or “help” or “benefit” someone.
- To “do good on the Sabbath” means to “do things that help others on the Sabbath.”
- Depending on the context, ways to translate the term “goodness” could include, “blessing” or “kindness” or “moral perfection” or “righteousness” or “purity.”

(See also: [evil](#), [wicked](#), [wickedness](#), [holy](#), [holiness](#), [profit](#), [profitable](#), [righteous](#), [righteousness](#),)

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- [01-04] God saw that what he had created was **good**.

- [01-11] God planted...the tree of the knowledge of **good** and evil.”
- [01-12] Then God said, ”It is not **good** for man to be alone.”
- [02-04]”God just knows that as soon as you eat it, you will be like God and will understand **good** and evil like he does.”
- [08-12]”You tried to do evil when you sold me as a slave, but God used the evil for **good!**”
- [14-15] Joshua was a **good** leader because he tTable of Contentsrusted and obeyed God.
- [18-13] Some of these kings were **good** men who ruled justly and worshiped God.
- [28-01]”**Good** teacher, what must I do to have eternal life?” Jesus said to him, ”Why do you call me ’**good?**’ There is only one who is **good**, and that is God.”

good news, gospel

Definition:

The term “gospel” literally means “good news” and refers to a message or announcement that tells people something that benefits them and makes them glad.

- In the Bible, this term usually refers to the message about God’s salvation for people through Jesus’ sacrifice on the cross.
- In most English Bibles, “good news” is usually translated as “gospel” and is also used in phrases such as, the “gospel of Jesus Christ,” the “gospel of God” and the “gospel of the kingdom.”

Translation Suggestions:

- Different ways to translate this term could include, “good message” or “good announcement” or “God’s message of salvation” or “the good things God teaches about Jesus.”
- Depending on the context, ways to translate the phrase, “good news of” could include, “good news/message about” or “good message from” or “the good things God tells us about” or “what God says about how he saves people.”

(See: [kingdom](#), , [sacrifice](#), [offering](#), [salvation](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- [23-06] The angel said, “Do not be afraid, because I have some **good news** for you. The Messiah, the Master, has been born in Bethlehem!”
- [26-03] Jesus read, “God has given me his Spirit so that I can proclaim **good news** to the poor, freedom to captives, recovery of sight for the blind, and release to the oppressed. This is the year of the Lord’s favor.”
- [45-10] Philip also used other Scriptures to tell him the **good news of Jesus**.
- [46-10] Then they sent them off to preach the **good news about Jesus** in many other places.
- [47-01] One day, Paul and his friend Silas went to the town of Philippi to proclaim the **good news about Jesus**.
- [47-13] The **good news about Jesus** kept spreading, and the Church kept growing.
- [50-01] For almost 2,000 years, more and more people around the world have been hearing the **good news about Jesus** the Messiah.
- [50-02] When Jesus was living on earth he said, “My disciples will preach the **good news** about the kingdom of God to people everywhere in the world, and then the end will come.”

- **[50-03]** Before he returned to heaven, Jesus told Christians to proclaim the **good news** to people who have never heard it.

gossip

Definition:

The term “gossip” refers to talking to people about someone else’s personal affairs, usually in a negative and unproductive way. Often what is talked about has not been confirmed as true.

- The Bible says that spreading negative information about people is wrong. Gossip and slander are examples of this kind of negative speech.
- Gossip is harmful to the person being spoken about because it often hurts someone’s relationships with other people.

(See also: [slander](#), [slanderer](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

grace, gracious**Definition:**

The word “grace” refers to help or blessing that is given to someone who has not earned it. The term “gracious” describes someone who shows grace to others.

- God’s grace toward sinful human beings is a gift that is freely given.
- The concept of grace also refers to being kind and forgiving to someone who has done wrong or hurtful things.
- The expression “to find grace” is an expression that means to receive help and mercy from God. Often it includes the meaning that God is pleased with someone and helps him.

Translation Suggestions:

- Other ways that “grace” could be translated include, “divine kindness” or “God’s favor” or “God’s kindness and forgiveness for sinners” or “merciful kindness.”
- The term “gracious” could be translated as “full of grace” or “kind” or “merciful” or “mercifully kind.”
- The expression, “he found grace in the eyes of God” could be translated as, “he received mercy from God” or “God mercifully helped him” or “God showed his favor to him” or “God was pleased with him and helped him.”

Bible References:

Waiting

grain

Definition:

The term “grain” usually refers to the seed of a food plant such as wheat, barley, corn, millet, or rice. It can also refer to the whole plant.

- In the Bible, the main grains that are referred to are wheat and barley.
- The heads of grain are the part of the plant that holds the grain.
- Note that some older Bible versions use the word “corn” to refer to grain in general. In modern English however, “corn” only refers to one type of grain.

(See also: [head](#), [wheat](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

guilt, guilty

Definition:

The term “guilt” refers to the fact of having sinned or committed a crime.

- To “be guilty” means to have done something morally wrong, that is, to have disobeyed God.
- The opposite of “guilty” is “innocent.”

Translation Suggestions:

- Some languages might translate “guilt” as “the weight of sin” or “the counting of sins.”
- Ways to translate “to be guilty” could include a word or phrase that means, “to be at fault” or “having done something morally wrong” or “having committed a sin.”

ULB exs: take away the guilt of your sin, take away your guilt, guilt offering, punish your guilt, no guilt for murder will attach to him, carry his own guilt, wash away his guilt, be in great guilt, our guilt grows to the heavens

(See also: [innocent](#), [iniquity](#)[punish](#), [punishment](#), [sin](#), [sinful](#), [sinner](#).)

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[39-02]** They brought many witnesses who lied about him (Jesus). However, their statements did not agree with each other, so the Jewish leaders could not prove he was **guilty** of anything.
- **[39-11]** After speaking with Jesus, Pilate went out to the crowd and said, “I find no **guilt** in this man.” But the Jewish leaders and the crowd shouted, “Crucify him!” Pilate replied, “He is not **guilty**.” But they shouted even louder. Then Pilate said a third time, “He is not **guilty!**”
- **[40-04]** Jesus was crucified between two robbers. One of them mocked Jesus, but the other said, “Don’t you fear God? We are **guilty**, but this man is innocent.
- **[49-10]** Because of your sin, you are **guilty** and deserve to die.

heart

Definition:

In the Bible, the term “heart” is often used figuratively to refer to a person’s thoughts, emotions, desires, or will.

- To have a “hard heart” is a common expression that means a person stubbornly refuses to obey God.
- The expressions “with all my heart” or “with my whole heart” mean to do something with no holding back, with complete commitment and willingness.
- The expression, “take it to heart” means to treat something seriously and apply it to one’s life.
- The term “brokenhearted” describes a person who is very sad. They have been deeply hurt emotionally.

Translation Suggestions

- Some languages use a different body part such as “stomach” or “liver” to refer to these ideas.
- Other languages may use one word to express some of these concepts and another word to express others.
- If “heart” or other body part does not have this meaning, some languages may need to express this nonfiguratively with terms such as “thoughts” or “emotions” or “desires.”
- Depending on the context, “with all my heart” or “with my whole heart” could be translated as, “with all my energy” or “with complete dedication” or “completely” or “with total commitment.”
- The expression “take it to heart” could be translated as “treat it seriously” or “carefully think about it.”
- The expression “hard-hearted” could also be translated as, “stubbornly rebellious” or “refusing to obey” or “continually disobeying God.”
- Ways to translate “brokenhearted” could include, “very sad” or “feeling deeply hurt.”

(See also: [hard](#), [hardness](#), [harden](#) other)

Bible References:

Waiting

holy, holiness

Definition:

The terms “holy” and “holiness” refer to the character of God that is totally set apart and separated from everything that is sinful and imperfect.

- Only God is absolutely holy. He makes people and things holy.
- A person who is holy belongs to God and has been set apart for the purpose of serving God and bringing him glory.
- An object that God has declared to be holy is one that he has set apart for his glory and use, such as an altar that is for the purpose of offering sacrifices to him.
- Since God is holy, people cannot approach him unless he allows them to, because they are mere human beings, sinful and imperfect.
- In the Old Testament, God set apart the priests as holy for special service to him. They had to be ceremonially cleansed from sin in order to approach God.
- God also set apart as holy certain places and things that belonged to him or in which he revealed himself, such as his temple.

Translation Suggestions:

- Ways to translate “holy” might include, “set apart for God” or “belonging to God” or “completely pure” or “perfectly sinless” or “separated from sin.”
- To “make holy” is often translated as “sanctify” in English. It could also be translated as “set apart (someone) for God’s glory.”

(See also: [Holy Spirit](#), [Spirit of God](#), [Spirit of the Lord](#), [consecratesanctify](#), [sanctification](#), [set apart](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[01-16]** He (God) blessed the seventh day and made it **holy**, because on this day he rested from his work.
- **[09-12]** “You are standing on **holy** ground.”
- **[13-02]** “If you will obey me and keep my covenant, you will be my prized possession, a kingdom of priests, and a **holy** nation.”
- **[13-05]** “Always be sure to keep the Sabbath day **holy**.”
- **[22-05]** “So the baby will be **holy**, the Son of God.”
- **[50-02]** As we wait for Jesus to return, God wants us to live in a way that is **holy** and that honors him.

Holy Spirit, Spirit of God, Spirit of the Lord

Facts:

These terms all refer to the Holy Spirit, who is God. The one true God exists eternally as the Father, the Son, and the Holy Spirit.

- The Holy Spirit is also referred to as, “the Spirit” and “Spirit of Yahweh” and “Spirit of truth.”
- Because the Holy Spirit is God, he is absolutely holy, infinitely pure, and morally perfect in all his nature and in everything he does.
- Along with the Father and the Son, the Holy Spirit was active in creating the world.
- When God’s Son, Jesus, returned to heaven, God sent the Holy Spirit to his people to lead them, teach them, comfort them, and enable them to do God’s will.
- The Holy Spirit guided Jesus and he guides those who believe in Jesus.

Translation Suggestions:

- This term could simply be translated with the words used to translate “holy” and “spirit.”
- Ways to translate this term could also include, “Pure Spirit” or “Spirit who is Holy” or “God the Spirit.”

(See also: [holy](#), [holiness](#), [spirit](#), [spiritual](#), [God](#), [Lord](#), [God the Father](#), [heavenly Father](#), [Father](#), [Son of God](#), [the Son](#), [Son](#), [gift](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[01-01]** But **God’s Spirit** was there over the water.
- **[24-08]** When Jesus came up out of the water after being baptized, **the Spirit of God** appeared in the form of a dove and came down and rested on him.
- **[26-01]** After overcoming Satan’s temptations, Jesus returned in the power of **the Holy Spirit** to the region of Galilee where he lived.
- **[26-03]** Jesus read, “God has given me **his Spirit** so that I can proclaim good news to the poor, freedom to captives, recovery of sight for the blind, and release to the oppressed.”
- **[42-10]** “So go, make disciples of all people groups by baptizing them in the name of the Father, the Son, and **the Holy Spirit** and by teaching them to obey everything I have commanded you.”
- **[43-03]** They were all filled with the **Holy Spirit** and they began to speak in other languages.
- **[43-08]** “And Jesus has sent the **Holy Spirit** just as he promised he would do. The **Holy Spirit** is causing the things that you are now seeing and hearing.”

- **[43-11]** Peter answered them, "Every one of you should repent and be baptized in the name of Jesus Christ so that God will forgive your sins. Then he will also give you the gift of the **Holy Spirit.**"
- **[45-01]** He (Stephen) had a good reputation and was full of the **Holy Spirit** and of wisdom.

honor, to honor

Definition:

The terms “honor” and “to honor” refer to giving someone respect, esteem, or reverence.

- Honor is usually given to someone who is of higher status and importance, such as a king or God.
- God also instructs Christians to honor others, but not to try to get honor for themselves.
- Children are instructed to honor their parents, which includes respect and obedience.
- the terms “honor” and “glory” are often used together, especially when referring to Jesus. These may be two different ways of referring to the same thing.
- Honor for God includes thanking and praising him, and showing him respect by obeying him and living in a way that shows how great he is.

Translation Suggestions:

- Other ways to translate “honor” could include, “respect” or “esteem” or “high regard.”
- The term “to honor” could be translated as “to show special respect to” or “to cause to be praised” or “to show high regard for” or “to highly value.”

(See also: [dishonor](#), [dishonorable](#), [glory](#), [glorious](#), [glorify](#), [praise](#) other)

Bible References:

Waiting

hope

Definition:

The term “hope” refers to expecting and strongly desiring something to happen. It can also mean to not be certain that it will happen.

- In the Bible, the term “hope” also has the meaning of “trust” as in, “my hope is in the Lord.” It refers to a sure expectation of receiving what God has promised his people.
- Sometimes the ULB translates the term “hope” as “confidence,” especially in the New Testament in contexts that refer to the assurance of receiving what God has promised to people who believe in Jesus as their Savior.
- To have “no hope” means to have no expectation of something good happening. It means that it is actually very certain that it will not happen.

Translation Suggestions:

- In some contexts, the term “to hope” could also be translated as “to wish” or “to desire” or “to expect.”
- The expression, “nothing to hope for” could be translated as “nothing to trust in” or “no expectation of anything good”
- To “have no hope” could be translated as, “have no expectation of anything good” or “have no security” or “be sure that nothing good will happen.”
- The expression, “have set your hopes on” could also be translated as “have put your confidence in” or “have been trusting in.”
- The phrase “I find hope in your Word” could also be translated as, “I am confident that your Word is true” or “Your Word helps me trust in you” or “When I obey your Word, I am certain to be blessed.”
- Phrases such as, “hope in” God could also be translated as, “trust in God” or “know for sure that God will do what he has promised” or “be certain that God is faithful.”

(See also: [bless](#), [blessed](#), [blessing](#), [confidence](#), [confident](#), [good](#), [goodness](#), [obey](#), [obedient](#), [obedience](#), [trust](#), [trustworthy](#), [trustworthiness](#), [word of God](#), [word of Yahweh](#), [word of the Lord](#), [scripture](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

~review~DISCUSSION~~

house

Definition:

The term “house” is often used figuratively in the Bible.

- Sometimes it means “household,” referring to the people who live together in one house.
- Often “house” refers to a person’s descendants or other relatives. For example, the phrase “house of David” refers to all the descendants of King David.
- The terms “house of God” and “house of Yahweh” refer to the tabernacle or temple. These expressions can also refer generally to where God is or dwells.
- In Hebrews 3, “God’s house” is used as a metaphor to refer to God’s people or more generally, to everything pertaining to God.
- The phrase “house of Israel” can refer generally to the entire nation of Israel or more specifically to the tribes of the northern kingdom of Israel.

Translation Suggestions

- Depending on the context, “house” could be translated as, “household” or “people” or “family” or “descendants” or “temple” or “dwelling place.”
- The phrase “house of David” could be translated as, “clan of David” or “family of David” or “descendants of David.” Related expressions could be translated in a similar way.
- Different ways to translate “house of Israel” could include, “people of Israel” or “Israel’s descendants” or “Israelites.”
- The phrase “house of Yahweh” could be translated as “Yahweh’s temple” or “place where Yahweh is worshiped” or “place where Yahweh meets with his people” or “where Yahweh dwells.”
- “House of God” could be translated in a similar way.

(See also: [David](#), [descendant](#), [descended from](#), [house of God](#), [Yahweh’s house](#), [household](#), [kingdom of Israel](#), [tabernacle](#), [temple](#), [Yahweh](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

household

Definition:

The term “household” refers to all the people who live together in a house, including family members and any servants they have.

- If someone manages a household, this would involve directing the servants as well as taking care of the property.
- Sometimes “household” can refer figuratively to the whole family line of someone, especially his descendants.

(See also: [house](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

house of God, Yahweh's house

Definition:

In the Bible, the phrases “house of God” (God’s house) and “house of Yahweh (Yahweh’s house) refer to a place where God is worshiped.

- This term is also used more specifically to refer to the tabernacle or the temple.
- Sometimes “God’s house” is used to refer to the people of God.

Translation Suggestions:

- When referring to a place of worship, this term could be translated as, “a house for worshiping God” or “a place for worshiping God.”
- If it is referring to the temple or tabernacle, this could be translated as, “the temple (or tabernacle) where God is worshiped (or “where God is present” or “where God meets with his people.”)
- The word “house” may be important to use in the translation in order to communicate that God “dwells” there, that is, his spirit is in that place to meet with his people and to be worshiped by them.

(See also: [people of God](#), [tabernacle](#), [temple](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

hypocrite, hypocrisy

Definition:

The term “hypocrite” refers to a person who does things to appear righteous, but who secretly is acting in evil ways. The term “hypocrisy” refers to the behavior that deceives people into thinking a person is righteous.

- Hypocrites want to be seen doing good things so that people will think that they are good people.
- Often a hypocrite will criticize other people for doing the same sinful things that they themselves do.
- Jesus called the Pharisees hypocrites because they did religious things like wearing certain clothes and eating certain foods, but they were not kind or fair to people.
- A hypocrite points out faults in other people, but doesn’t admit his own faults.

Translation Suggestions:

- Some languages have an expression like “two-faced” that refers to a hypocrite or a hypocrite’s actions.
- Other ways to translate “hypocrite” could include, “fraud” or “pretender” or “arrogant, deceitful person.”
- The term “hypocrisy” could be translated by, “deception” or “fake actions” or “pretending.”

Bible References:

Waiting

in Christ, in Jesus, in the Lord, in him

Definition:

The phrase “in Christ” and related terms refer to the state or condition of being in relationship with Jesus Christ through faith in him.

- Other related terms include, “in Christ Jesus, in Jesus Christ, in the Lord Jesus, in the Lord Jesus Christ.”
- Possible meanings for the term, “in Christ” could include, “because you belong to Christ” or “through the relationship you have with Christ” or “based on your faith in Christ.”
- These related terms all have the same meaning of being in a state of believing in Jesus and being his disciple.
- Note: Sometimes the word “in” belongs with the verb. For example, “share in Christ” means to “share in” the benefits that come from knowing Christ. To “glory in” Christ means to be glad and give praise to God for who Jesus is and what he has done. To “believe in” Christ means to trust him as Savior and know him.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, different ways to translate “in Christ” and “in the Lord” (and related phrases) could include:
 - “who belong to Christ”
 - “because you believe in Christ”
 - “because Christ has saved us”
 - “in service to the Lord”
 - “relying on the Lord”
 - “because of what the Lord has done.”
- People who “believe in” Christ or who “have faith in” Christ believe what Jesus taught and are trusting him to save them because of his sacrifice on the cross that paid the penalty for their sins. Some languages may have one word that translates verbs like “believe in” or “share in” or “trust in.”

(See also: [Christ](#), [Messiah](#), [Lord](#), [Jesus](#), [Jesus Christ](#), [Christ Jesus](#), [believe](#), [believe in](#), [belief](#), [faith](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

instruct, instruction**Facts:**

The terms “instruct” and “instruction” refer to giving specific directions about what to do.

- To “give instructions” means to tell someone specifically what he is supposed to do.
- When Jesus gave the disciples the bread and fish to distribute to the people, he gave them specific instructions about how to do it.
- Depending on the context, the term “instruct” could also be translated as “tell” or “direct” or “teach” or “give instructions to.”
- The term “instructions” could be translated as “directions” or “explanations” or “what he has told you to do.”
- When God gives instructions, this term is sometimes translated as “commands” or “orders.”

(See also: [command](#), [to command](#), [commandment](#), [decree](#), [teach](#), [teaching](#), [teacher](#), [taught](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

intercede, intercession

Definition:

The terms “intercede” and “intercession” refer to making requests to someone on behalf of another person. In the Bible this usually refers to praying for other people.

- The expressions “make intercession for” and “intercede for” mean to make requests to God for the benefit of other people.
- The Bible teaches that the Holy Spirit intercedes for us, that is, he prays to God for us.
- A person intercedes for other people by making requests for them to someone in authority.

Translation Suggestions:

- Other ways to translate “intercede” could include, “plead for” or “urge (someone) to do something (for someone else).”
- The noun “intercessions” could be translated as “appeals” or “requests” or “urgent prayers.”
- The phrase “make intercession for” could be translated as, “make requests for the benefit of” or “make an appeal on behalf of” or “ask God to help” or “appeal to God to bless” (someone).

(See also: [pray](#), [prayer](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Jesus, Jesus Christ, Christ Jesus

Facts:

Jesus is God's Son. The name "Jesus" means, "Yahweh saves." The term "Christ" is a title that means "anointed one" and is another word for the Messiah.

- The two names are often combined as "Jesus Christ" or "Christ Jesus." These names emphasize that God's Son is the Messiah who came to save people from being punished eternally for their sins.
- In a miraculous way, the Holy Spirit caused the eternal Son of God to be born as a human being. His earthly parents were told by an angel to call him "Jesus" because he was destined to save people from their sins.
- Jesus did many miracles that revealed that he is God and that he is the Christ, or Messiah.

Translation Suggestions:

- Many languages spell "Jesus" and "Christ" in a way that keeps the sounds or spelling as close to the original as possible. For example, "Jesucristo," "Jezus Christus," "Yesus Kristus", and "Hesukristo" are some of the ways that these names are translated into different languages.
- For the term, "Christ," some languages may prefer to use some form of the term "Messiah" throughout.
- Also consider how these names are spelled in a nearby local or national language.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Christ](#), [Messiah](#), [God](#), [God the Father](#), [Heavenly Father](#), [high priest](#), [kingdom of God](#), [kingdom of heaven](#), [Mary](#), [Savior](#), [Son of God](#), [the Son](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[22-04]** The angel said, "You will become pregnant and give birth to a son. You are to name him **Jesus** and he will be the Messiah."
- **[23-02]** "Name him **Jesus** (which means, 'Yahweh saves'), because he will save the people from their sins."
- **[24-07]** So John baptized him (Jesus), even though **Jesus** had never sinned.
- **[24-09]** There is only one God. But John heard God the Father speak, and saw **Jesus** the Son and the Holy Spirit when he baptized **Jesus**.
- **[25-08]** **Jesus** did not give in to Satan's temptations, so Satan left him.

- **[26-08]** Then **Jesus** went throughout the region of Galilee, and large crowds came to him. They brought many people who were sick or handicapped, including those who could not see, walk, hear, or speak, and **Jesus** healed them.
- **[31-03]** Then **Jesus** finished praying and went to the disciples. He walked on top of the water across the lake toward their boat!
- **[38-02]** He (Judas) knew that the Jewish leaders denied that **Jesus** was the Messiah and that they were plotting to kill him.
- **[40-08]** Through his death, **Jesus** opened a way for people to come to God.
- **[42-11]** Then **Jesus** was taken up to heaven, and a cloud hid him from their sight. **Jesus** sat down at the right hand of God to rule over all things.
- **[50-17]** **Jesus** and his people will live on the new earth, and he will reign forever over everything that exists. He will wipe away every tear and there will be no more suffering, sadness, crying, evil, pain, or death. **Jesus** will rule his kingdom with peace and justice, and he will be with his people forever.

judge, judgment

Definition:

The terms “judge” and “judgment” often refer to making a decision about whether something is morally right or wrong.

- The “judgment of God” often refers to his decision to condemn something or someone as sinful.
- God’s judgment usually includes punishing people for their sin.
- The term “judge” can also mean “condemn.” God instructs his people not to judge each other in this way.
- Another meaning is “arbitrate between” or “judge between,” as in deciding which person is right in a dispute between them.
- In some contexts, God’s “judgments” are what he has decided is right and just. They are similar to his decrees, laws, or precepts.
- “Judgment” can refer to wise decision-making ability. A person who lacks “judgment” does not have the wisdom to make wise decisions.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, ways to translate “to judge” could include, “to decide” or “to condemn” or “to punish” or “to decree.”
- The term “judgment” could be translated as, “punishment” or “decision” or “verdict” or “decree” or “condemnation.”
- In some contexts, the phrase “in the judgment” could also be translated as “on judgment day” or “during the time when God judges people.”

(See also: [decree](#), [judge](#), [judgment day](#), [just](#), [justice](#), [justly](#), [law](#), [principle](#), [law](#), [law of Moses](#), [God’s law](#), [law of Yahweh](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[19-16]** The prophets warned the people that if they did not stop doing evil and start obeying God, then God would **judge** them as guilty, and he would punish them.
- **[21-08]** A king is someone who rules over a kingdom and **judges** the people. The Messiah would come would be the perfect king who would sit on the throne of his ancestor David. He would reign over the whole world forever, and who would always **judge** honestly and make the right decisions.

- **[39-04]** The high priest tore his clothes in anger and shouted to the other religious leaders, "We do not need any more witnesses! You have heard him say that he is the Son of God. What is your **judgment**?"
- **[50-14]** But God will **judge** everyone who does not believe in Jesus. He will throw them into hell, where they will weep and grind their teeth in anguish forever.

justify, justification

Definition:

The terms “justify” and “justification” refer to causing a guilty person to be righteous. Only God can truly justify people.

- When God justifies people, he forgives their sins and makes it as though they have no sin. He justifies sinners who repent and trust in Jesus to save them from their sins.
- “Justification” refers to what God does when he forgives a person’s sins and declares that person to be righteous in his sight.

Translation Suggestions:

- Other ways to translate “justify” could include, “declare (someone) to be righteous” or “cause (someone) to be righteous.”
- The term “justification” could be translated as, “being declared righteous” or “becoming righteous” or “causing people to be righteous.”
- The phrase “resulting in justification” could be translated as, “so that God justified many people” or “which resulted in God causing people to be righteous.”
- The phrase “for our justification” could be translated as, “in order that we could be made righteous by God.”

(See also: [forgive](#), [forgiveness](#), [guilt](#), [guilty](#), [righteous](#), [righteousness](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

king

Definition:

The term “king” refers to a man who is the supreme ruler of a city, state, or country.

- A king is usually chosen to rule because of his family relation to previous kings.
- When a king dies, it is usually his oldest son who becomes the next king.
- In ancient times, the king had absolute authority over the people in his kingdom.
- Rarely the term “king” may be used to refer to someone who is not a true king, such as “King Herod” in the New Testament.
- In the Bible, God is often referred to as a king who rules over his people.
- The “kingdom of God” refers to God’s rule over his people.
- Jesus was called “king of the Jews,” “king of Israel,” and “king of kings.”
- When Jesus comes back, he will rule as king over the world.
- This term could also be translated as, “supreme chief” or “absolute leader” or “sovereign ruler.”
- The phrase “king of kings” could be translated as, “king who rules over all other kings” or “supreme ruler who has authority over all other rulers.”

(See also: [authority](#), [Herod Antipas](#), [kingdom](#), [kingdom of God](#), [kingdom of heaven](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[08-06]** One night, the Pharaoh, which is what the Egyptians called their kings, had two dreams that disturbed him greatly.
- **[16-01]** The Israelites had no **king**, so everyone did what they thought was right for them.
- **[16-18]** Finally, the people asked God for a **king** like all the other nations had.
- **[17-05]** Eventually, Saul died in battle, and David became **king** of Israel. He was a good **king**, and the people loved him.
- **[21-06]** God’s prophets also said that the Messiah would be a prophet, a priest, and a **king**.
- **[48-14]** David was the **king** of Israel, but Jesus is the **king** of the entire universe!

know, knowledge, make known

Definition:

To “know” means to understand something or to be aware of a fact. The expression “make known” is an expression that means to tell information.

- The term “knowledge” refers to information that people know. It can apply to knowing things in both the physical and spiritual worlds.
- To “know about” God means to understand facts about him because of what he has revealed to us.
- To “know” God means to have a relationship with him. This also applies to knowing people.
- To know God’s will means to be aware of what he has commanded, or to understand what he wants a person to do.
- To “know the Law” means to be aware of what God has commanded or to understand what God has instructed in the laws he gave to Moses.
- Sometimes “knowledge” is used as a synonym for “wisdom,” which includes living in a way that is pleasing to God.
- The “knowledge of God” is sometimes used as a synonym for the “fear of Yahweh.”

Translation Suggestions

- Depending on the context, ways to translate “know” could include, “understand” or “be familiar with” or “be aware of” or “be acquainted with” or “be in relationship with.”
- Some languages have two different words for “know” depending on whether it refers to knowing facts or to knowing a person and having a relationship with him.
- The term “make known” could be translated as “cause people to know” or “reveal” or “tell about” or “explain.”
- To “know about” something could be translated as “be aware of” or “be familiar with.”
- The expression “know how to” means to understand the process or method of getting something done. It could also be translated as, “be able to” or “have the skill to.”
- The term “knowledge” could also be translated as, “what is known” or “wisdom” or “understanding,” depending on the context.

(See also: [law](#), [law of Moses](#), [God’s law](#), [law of Yahweh](#), [reveal](#), [revelation](#), [understand](#), [understanding](#), [wise](#), [wisdom](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

labor, laborer

Definition:

The term “labor” refers to doing hard work of any kind.

- In general, labor is any task which uses energy. It often implies that the task is difficult.
- A laborer is a person who does any type of labor.
- In English, the word “labor” is also used for part of the process of giving birth. Other languages may have a completely different word for this.
- Ways to translate “labor” could include, “work” or “hard work” or “difficult work” or “to work hard.”

(See also: [hard](#), [hardness](#), [harden](#), [labor pains](#), [in labor](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

last day, last days, latter days

Definition:

The term “last days” or “latter days” refers generally to the time period at the end of the current age.

- This time period will be an unknown length of time.
- The “last days” are a time of judgment upon those who have turned away from God.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term, “last days” can also be translated as “final days” or “end times.”
- In some contexts, this could be translated as, “end of the world” or “when this world ends.”

(See also: [day of the Lord](#), [day of Yahweh](#), [judge](#), [judgment](#), [turn](#), [turn away](#), [turn back](#), [world](#), [worldly](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

lawful, lawfully, unlawful

Definition:

The term “lawful” refers to something that is permitted to be done according to a law or other requirement. The opposite of this is “unlawful” which simply means “not lawful.”

- In the Bible, if something is said to be “lawful” it means it is permitted by God’s moral law, or by the Law of Moses and other Jewish laws. Something that is “unlawful” is “not permitted” by those laws.
- To do something “lawfully” means to do it “properly” or “in the right way.”
- Many of the things that the Jewish laws considered lawful or not lawful were not in agreement with God’s laws about loving others.
- Depending on the context, ways to translate “lawful” could include, “permitted” or “according to God’s law” or “following our laws” or “proper” or “fitting.”
- The phrase “Is it lawful” could also be translated as “Do our laws allow” or “Is that something our laws permit?”

(See also: [law](#), [law of Moses](#), [God’s law](#), [law of Yahweh](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

lawless, lawlessness

Definition:

The term “lawless” describes a person who does not obey laws or rules. When a country or group of people are in a state of “lawlessness” it means there is widespread disobedience, rebellion, or immorality.

- A lawless person is rebellious and does not obey God’s laws.
- The apostle Paul wrote that in the last days there will be a “man of lawlessness,” or a “lawless one,” who will be influenced by Satan to do evil things.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “lawless” could also be translated as, “rebellious” or “disobedient” or “law-defying”.
- The term “lawlessness” could be translated as, “not obeying any laws” or “rebellion (against God’s laws).”
- The phrase, “man of lawlessness” could be translated as, “man who does not obey any laws” or “man who rebels against God’s laws.”
- It is important to keep the concept of “law” in this term, if possible.
- Note that the term “unlawful” has a different meaning from this term.

(See also: [law](#), [principle](#), [lawful](#), [lawfully](#), [unlawful](#), [law](#), [law of Moses](#), [God’s law](#), [law of Yahweh](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

law, law of Moses, God's law, law of Yahweh

Definition:

All these terms refer to the commandments and instructions that God gave Moses for the Israelites to obey. The terms “law” and “God’s law” are also used more generally to refer to everything God wants his people to obey.

- Depending on the context, the “law” can refer to:
 - the Ten Commandments that God wrote on stone tablets for the Israelites.
 - all the laws given to Moses
 - the first five books of the Old Testament.
 - the entire Old Testament (also referred to as “scriptures” in the New Testament).
 - all of God’s instructions and will.
- The phrase “the law and the prophets” is used in the New Testament to refer to the Hebrew scriptures (or “Old Testament”).

Translation Suggestions:

- These terms could be translated using the plural, “laws” since they refer to many instructions.
- The “law of Moses” could be translated as “the laws that God told Moses to give to the Israelites.”
- Depending on the context, “the law of Moses” could also be translated as, “the law that God told to Moses” or “God’s laws that Moses wrote down” or “the laws that God told Moses to give to the Israelites.”
- Ways to translate “the law” or “law of God” or “God’s laws” could include: “laws from God” or “God’s commands” or “laws that God gave” or “everything that God commands” or “all of God’s instructions”
- The phrase, “law of Yahweh” could also be translated as, “Yahweh’s laws” or “laws that Yahweh said to obey” or “laws from Yahweh” or “things Yahweh commanded.”

(See also: [instruct](#), [instruction](#), [Moses](#), [Ten Commandments](#), [lawful](#), [lawfully](#), [unlawful](#), [Yahweh](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[13-07]** God also gave many other **laws** and rules to follow. If the people obeyed these **laws**, God promised that he would bless and protect them. If they disobeyed them, God would punish them.

- **[13-09]** Anyone who disobeyed **God's law** could bring an animal to the altar in front of the Tent of Meeting as a sacrifice to God.
- **[15-13]** Then Joshua reminded the people of their obligation to obey the covenant that God had made with the Israelites at Sinai. The people promised to remain faithful to God and follow **his laws**.
- **[16-01]** After Joshua died, the Israelites disobeyed God and did not drive out the rest of the Canaanites or obey **God's laws**.
- **[21-05]** In the New Covenant, God would write **his law** on the people's hearts, the people would know God personally, they would be his people, and God would forgive their sins.
- **[27-01]** Jesus answered, "What is written in **God's law**?"
- **[28-01]** Jesus said to him, "Why do you call me 'good?' There is only one who is good, and that is God. But if you want to have eternal life, obey **God's laws**."

life, live, living, alive

Definition:

All these terms refer to being physically alive, not dead. They are also used figuratively to refer to being alive spiritually. The following discusses what is meant by “physical life” and “spiritual life.”

1. Physical life

- Physical life is the presence of the spirit in the body. God breathed life into Adam’s body, and he became a living being.
- A “life” can also refer to an individual person, as in, “a life was saved”.
- Sometimes the word “life” refers to the experience of living, as in, “his life was enjoyable.”
- It can also refer to a person’s lifespan as in the expression, “the end of his life.”
- The term “living” may refer to being physically alive as in, “my mother is still living.” It may also refer to dwelling somewhere as in, “they were living in the city.”
- In the Bible, the concept of “life” is often contrasted with the concept of “death.”

2. Spiritual life

- A person has spiritual life when he believes in Jesus and God gives that person a transformed life with the Holy Spirit living in him.
- This life is also called “eternal life” to indicate that it does not end.
- The opposite of spiritual life is spiritual death, which means being separated from God and experiencing eternal punishment.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, “life” can be translated as “existence” or “person” or “soul” or “being” or “experience.”
- The term “live” could be translated by “dwell” or “reside” or “exist.”
- The expression “end of his life” could be translated as, “when he stopped living.”
- The expression “spared their lives’ could be translated as, “allowed them to live” or “did not kill them.”
- The expression “they risked their lives” could be translated as, “they put themselves in danger” or “they did something that could have killed them.”
- When the Bible text talks about being alive spiritually, “life” could be translated as “spiritual life” or “eternal life,” depending on the context.
- The concept of “spiritual life” could also be translated as, “God making us alive in our spirits” or “new life by God’s Spirit” or “being made alive in our inner self.”
- Depending on the context, the expression “give life” could also be translated as, “cause to live” or “give eternal life” or “cause to live eternally.”

(See also: [death](#), [die](#), [dead](#), [everlasting](#), [eternal](#), [eternity](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- [01-10] So God took some dirt, formed it into a man, and breathed **life** into him.
- [03-01] After a long time, many people were **living** in the world.
- [08-13] When Joseph's brothers returned home and told their father, Jacob, that Joseph was still **alive**, he was very happy.
- [17-09] However, toward the end of his [David's] **life** he sinned terribly before God.
- [27-01] One day, an expert in the Jewish law came to Jesus to test him, saying, "Teacher, what must I do to inherit eternal **life**?"
- [37-05] Jesus replied, "I am the Resurrection and the **Life**."
- [44-05] "You are the ones who told the Roman governor to kill Jesus. You killed the author of **life**, but God raised him from the dead."

lord, master, sir

Definition:

The term “lord” refers to someone who has ownership or authority over other people.

- This word is sometimes translated as “master” when addressing Jesus or when referring to someone who owns slaves.
- Some English versions translate this as “sir” in contexts where someone is politely addressing someone of higher status.

Translation Suggestions:

- This term should be translated as “master” when it refers to a person who owns slaves. It could also be used by a servant to address the person he works for.
- When it refers to Jesus, it could be translated as “master” if the context shows it means “religious teacher.”
- If the person addressing Jesus does not know him, “lord” could be translated as “sir.” This translation would also be used for other contexts in which a polite form of address to a man is called for.
- When referring to God the Father or to Jesus, this term is written as “Lord” (capitalized).

(See also: [Lord](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[25-05]** But Jesus replied to Satan by quoting from the Scriptures. He said, “In God’s word, he commands his people, ‘Do not test the **Lord** your God.’”
- **[25-07]** Jesus replied, “Get away from me, Satan! In God’s word he commands his people, ‘Worship only the **Lord** your God and only serve him.’”
- **[26-03]** This is the year of the **Lord’s** favor.
- **[27-02]** The law expert replied that God’s law says, “Love the **Lord** your God with all your heart, soul, strength, and mind.”
- **[31-05]** Then Peter said to Jesus, “**Master**, if it is you, command me to come to you on the water”
- **[43-09]** “But know for certain that God has caused Jesus to become both **Lord** and Messiah!”
- **[47-03]** By means of this demon she predicted the future for people, she made a lot of money for her **masters** as a fortuneteller.
- **[47-11]** Paul answered, “Believe in Jesus, the **Master**, and you and your family will be saved.”
-

Lord

Facts:

The term “Lord” refers to someone who has ownership or authority over people. When it is capitalized, it is a title that refers to God. (Note however that when used as a form of addressing someone or at the beginning of a sentence it may be capitalized and have the meaning of “sir” or “master.”)

- In the Old Testament, this term is also used in expressions such as, “Lord God Almighty” or “Lord Yahweh” or “Yahweh our Lord.”
- In the New Testament, the apostles used this term in expressions such as, “Lord Jesus” and “Lord Jesus Christ,” which communicate that Jesus is God.
- The term “Lord” in the New Testament is also used alone as a direct reference to God, especially in quotations from the Old Testament. For example, the Old Testament text has, “Blessed is he who comes in the name of Yahweh” and the New Testament text has, “Blessed is he who comes in the name of the Lord.”
- In the ULB and UDB, the title, “Lord” is only used to translate the actual Hebrew and Greek words that mean “Lord.” It is never used as a translation of God’s name (Yahweh), as is done in many translations.

Translation Suggestions:

- Some languages translate this term as “Master” or “Ruler” or some other term that communicates ownership or supreme ruler.
- In the appropriate contexts, many translations capitalize the first letter of this term to make it clear to the reader that this is a title referring to God.
- For places in the New Testament where there is a quote from the Old Testament, the term “Lord God” could be used to make it clear that this is a reference to God.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [God](#), [Jesus](#), [Jesus Christ](#), [Christ Jesus](#), [lord](#), [master](#), [sir](#), [ruler](#), [rulers](#), [rule](#), [Yahweh](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

love

Definition:

To love another person is to care for that person and do things that will benefit him. There are different meanings for “love” which some languages may express using different words:

1. The kind of love that comes from God is focused on the good of others, even when it doesn’t benefit oneself. This kind of love cares for others, no matter what they do. God himself is love and is the source of true love.

- Jesus showed this kind of love by sacrificing his life in order to rescue us from sin and death. He also taught his followers to love others sacrificially.
- When people love others with this kind of love, it involves actions that show that someone is thinking of what will cause the other person to thrive. This kind of love especially includes forgiving others.
- In the ULB, the word “love” refers to this kind of sacrificial love, unless a Translation Note indicates a different meaning.

2. Another word in the New Testament refers to brotherly love or love for a friend or family member.

- This term refers to natural human love between friends or relatives.
- It can also be used in such contexts as, “They love to sit in the most important seats at a banquet.” This means that they “like very much” or “greatly desire” to do that.

3. The word “love” can also refer to romantic love between a man and a woman.

4. In the figurative expression, “Jacob I have loved, but Esau I have hated,” the term “loved” refers to God’s choosing of Jacob to be in a covenant relationship with him. This could also be translated as “chosen.” Although Esau was also blessed by God, he wasn’t given the privilege of being in the covenant. The term “hated” is used figuratively here to mean “rejected” or “not chosen.”

Translation Suggestions:

- Unless indicated otherwise in a Translation Note, the word “love” in the ULB refers to the kind of sacrificial love that comes from God.
- Some languages may have a special word for the kind of unselfish, sacrificial love that God has. Ways to translate this might include, “devoted, faithful caring” or “care for unselfishly” or “love from God.” Make sure that the word used to translate God’s love can include giving up one’s own interests to benefit others and loving others no matter what they do.
- Sometimes the English word “love” describes the deep caring that people have for friends and family members. Some languages might translate this with a word or phrase that means, “like very much” or “care for” or “have strong affection for.”
- In contexts where the word “love” is used to express a strong preference for something, this could be translated by “strongly prefer” or “like very much” or “greatly desire.”

- Some languages may also have a separate word that refers to romantic or sexual love between a husband and wife.
- Many languages must express “love” as an action. So for example, they might translate “love is patient, love is kind” as, “when a person loves someone, he is patient with him and kind to him.”

(See also: [covenant](#), [death](#), [die](#), [dead](#), [sacrifice](#), [offering](#), [save](#), [safe](#), [sin](#), [sinful](#), [sinner](#), [sinning](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- [27-02] The law expert replied that God’s law says, “**Love** the Lord your God with all your heart, soul, strength, and mind. And **love** your neighbor as yourself.”
- [33-08] “The thorny ground is a person who hears God’s word, but, as time passes, the cares, riches, and pleasures of life choke out his **love** for God.”
- [36-05] As Peter was talking, a bright cloud came down on top of them and a voice from the cloud said, “This is my Son whom I **love**.”
- [39-10] “Everyone who **loves** the truth listens to me.”
- [47-01] She (Lydia) **loved** and worshiped God.
- [48-01] When God created the world, everything was perfect. There was no sin. Adam and Eve **loved** each other, and they **loved** God.
- [49-03] He (Jesus) taught that you need to **love** other people the same way you love yourself.
- [49-04] He (Jesus) also taught that you need to **love** God more than you **love** anything else, including your wealth.
- [49-07] Jesus taught that God **loves** sinners very much.
- [49-09] But God **loved** everyone in the world so much that he gave his only Son so that whoever believes in Jesus will not be punished for his sins, but will live with God forever.
- [49-13] God **loves** you and wants you to believe in Jesus so he can have a close relationship with you.

Macedonia

Facts:

In New Testament times, Macedonia was a Roman province located just north of ancient Greece.

- Some important Macedonian cities mentioned in the Bible were Berea, Philippi and Thessalonica.
- Through a vision, God told Paul to preach the gospel to the people in Macedonia.
- Paul and his coworkers went to Macedonia and taught the people there about Jesus and helped the new believers to grow in their faith.
- In the Bible there are letters that Paul wrote to the believers in the Macedonian cities of Philippi and Thessalonica.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [believer](#), [Berea](#), [faith](#), [good news](#), [gospel](#), [Greece](#), [Philippi](#), [Thessalonica](#), [Thessalonians](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

manager, steward

Definition:

The term “manager” or “steward” in the Bible refers to a servant who was entrusted with taking care of his master’s property and business dealings.

- A steward was given a lot of responsibility, which included supervising the work of other servants.
- The term “manager” is a more modern term for a steward. Both terms refer to someone who manages practical affairs for someone else.

Translation Suggestions:

- This could also be translated as, “supervisor” or “household organizer” or “servant who manages” or “person who organizes.”

(See also: [servant](#), [slave](#), [slavery](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

mediator

Definition:

A mediator is a person who helps two or more people to resolve their disagreements or conflicts with each other. He helps them and become reconciled.

- Because people have sinned, they are God’s enemies who deserve his wrath and punishment. Because of sin, the relationship between God and his people is broken.
- Jesus is the mediator between God the Father and his people, restoring that broken relationship through his death as payment for their sin.

Translation Suggestions:

- Ways to translate “mediator” could be, “go-between person” or “reconciler” or “person who brings peace.”
- Compare this term with how the term “priest” is translated. It is best if the term “mediator” is translated differently.

(See also: [priest](#), [priesthood](#), [reconcile](#), [reconciliation](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

mercy, merciful

Definition:

The terms “mercy” and “merciful” refer to helping people who are in need, especially when they are in a lowly or humbled condition.

- The term “mercy” can also include the meaning of not punishing people for something they have done wrong.
- A powerful person such as a king is described as “merciful” when he treats people kindly instead of harming them.
- Being merciful also means to forgive someone who has done something wrong against us.
- We show mercy when we help people who are in great need.
- God is merciful to us, and he wants us to be merciful to others.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, “mercy” could be translated as, “kindness” or “compassion” or “pity.”
- The term “merciful” could be translated as, “showing pity” or “being kind to” or “forgiving.”
- To “show mercy to” or “have mercy on” could be translated as, “treat kindly” or “be compassionate toward.”

(See: [compassion](#), [compassionate](#), [forgive](#), [forgiveness](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[19-16]** They (the prophets) all told the people to stop worshiping idols and to start showing justice and **mercy** to others.
- **[19-17]** He (Jeremiah) sank down into the mud that was in the bottom of the well, but then the king had **mercy** on him and ordered his servants to pull Jeremiah out of the well before he died.
- **[20-12]** The Persian Empire was strong but **merciful** to the people it conquered.
- **[27-11]** Then Jesus asked the law expert, “What do you think? Which one of the three men was a neighbor to the man who was robbed and beaten?” He replied, “The one who was **merciful** to him.”
- **[32-11]** But Jesus said to him, “No, I want you to go home and tell your friends and family about everything that God has done for you and how he has had **mercy** on you.”

- **[34-09]**”But the tax collector stood far away from the religious ruler, did not even look up to heaven. Instead, he pounded on his chest and prayed, ‘God, please be **merciful** to me because I am a sinner.’”

mind

Definition:

The term “mind” refers to the part of a person that thinks and makes decisions.

- The mind of each person is the total of his or her thoughts and reasoning.
- To “have the mind of Christ” means to be thinking and acting as Jesus Christ would think and act. It means being obedient to God the Father, obeying the teachings of Christ, being enabled to do this through the power of the Holy Spirit.
- To “change his mind” means someone made a different decision or had a different opinion than he had previously.

Translation Suggestions

- The term “mind” could also be translated as “thoughts” or “reasoning” or “thinking” or “understanding.”
- The expression, “keep in mind” could be translated as, “remember” or “pay attention to this” or “be sure to know this.”
- The expression, “heart, soul, and mind” could also be translated as, “what you feel, what you believe, and what you think about.”
- The expression “call to mind” could be translated as, “remember” or “think about.”
- The expression, “changed his mind and went” could also be translated as, “decided differently and went” or “decided to go after all” or “changed his opinion and went.”

(See also: [believe](#), [believe in](#), [belief](#), [heart](#), [soul](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

name

Definition:

In the Bible, the word “name” is used in several figurative ways.

- In some contexts, “name” can refer to a person’s reputation, as in, “let us make a name for ourselves.”
- The term “name” can also refer to the memory of something. For example, “cut off the names of the idols” means to destroy those idols so that they are no longer remembered or worshiped.
- Speaking “in the name of God” means speaking with his power and authority, or as his representative.
- The “name” of someone can refer to the entire person, as in “there is no other name under heaven by which we must be saved.” (See: [Metonymy](#))

Translation Suggestions:

- An expression like, “his good name” could be translated as “his good reputation.”
- Doing something “in the name of” could be translated as, “with the authority of” or “with the permission of” or “as the representative of” that person.
- The expression, “make a name for ourselves” could be translated, “cause many people to know about us” or “make people think we are very important.”
- The expression, “call his name” could be translated as, “name him” or “give him the name.”
- The expression, “those who love your name” could be translated as, “those who love you.”
- The expression, “cut off the names of idols” could be translated as “get rid of pagan idols so that they are not even remembered” or “cause people to stop worshiping false gods” or “completely destroy all idols so that people no longer even think about them.”

(See: [call](#), [calling](#), [called](#), [call out](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

nation

Definition:

A nation is a large group of people ruled by some form of government. The people of a nation often have the same ancestors and share a common ethnicity.

- The term “nation” usually includes the idea of a well-defined culture and territorial boundaries.
- In the Bible, a “nation” can be a country (like Egypt or Ethiopia), but often it is more general and refers to a people group, especially when used in the plural. It is important to check the context.
- Nations in the Bible included the Israelites, the Philistines, the Assyrians, the Babylonians, the Canaanites, the Romans, and the Greeks, among many others.
- Sometimes the word “nation” is used figuratively to refer to the ancestor of a certain people group, as when Rebekah was told by God that her unborn sons were “nations” that would fight against each other. This could be translated as “the founders of two nations” or the “ancestors of two people groups.”
- The word translated as “nation” is also sometimes used to refer to “Gentiles” or to people who do not worship Yahweh. The context usually makes the meaning clear.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, the word “nation” could also be translated as, “people group” or “people” or “country.”
- If a language has a term for “nation” that is distinct from these other terms, then that term can be used wherever it occurs in the Bible text, as long as it is natural and accurate in each context.
- The plural term “nations” can often be translated as “people groups.”
- In certain contexts, this term could also be translated as “Gentiles” or “nonJews.”

(See also: [Assyria](#), [Assyrian](#), [Assyrian Empire](#), [Babylon](#), [Babylonian](#), [Canaan](#), [Canaanite](#), [Gentile](#), [Greek](#), [Grecian](#), [people group](#), [peoples](#), [the people](#), [a people](#), [Philistines](#), [Rome](#), [Roman](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

obey, obedient, obedience

Definition:

The term “obey” means to do what is required or commanded. The term “obedient” describes the character of someone who obeys. Sometimes the command is about not doing something, as in, “do not steal.”

- Usually the term “obey” is used in the context of obeying the commands or laws of a person in authority.
- For example, people obey laws which are created by the leaders of a country, kingdom, or other organization.
- Children obey their parents, slaves obey their masters, people obey God, and citizens obey the laws of their country.
- When someone in authority commands people not to do something, they obey by not doing that.
- Ways to translate this term could include a word or phrase that means, “do what is commanded” or “follow orders” or “do what God says to do.”
- The term “obedient” could be translated as, “doing what was commanded” or “following orders” or “doing what God commands.”

(See also: [citizen](#), [command](#), [to command](#), [commandment](#), [disobey](#), [disobedient](#), [disobedience](#), [kingdom](#), [law](#), [principle](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[03-04]** Noah **obeyed** God. He and his three sons built the boat just the way God had told them.
- **[05-06]** Again Abraham **obeyed** God and prepared to sacrifice his son.
- **[05-10]** “Because you (Abraham) have **obeyed** me, all the families of the world will be blessed through your family”
- **[11-06]** But the Egyptians did not believe God or **obey** his commands.
- **[13-07]** If the people **obeyed** these laws, God promised that he would bless and protect them.

overseer**Definition:**

The term “overseer” refers to a person who is in charge of the work and welfare of other people.

- In the Old Testament, an overseer had the job of making sure the workers under him did their work well.
- In the New Testament, this term is used to describe leaders of the early Christian church. Their work was to take care of the spiritual needs of the church, making sure the believers received accurate biblical teaching.
- Paul refers to an overseer as being like a shepherd who takes care of the believers in a local church, who are his “flock.”
- The overseer, like a shepherd, keeps watch over the flock. He guards and protects the believers from false spiritual teaching and other evil influences.
- In the New Testament, the terms “overseer,” “elder,” and “shepherd/pastor” are different ways of referring to the same spiritual leaders.

Translation Suggestions

- Other ways to translate this term could be, “supervisor” or “caretaker” or “manager.”
- When referring to a leader of a local group of God’s people, this term could be translated with a word or phrase that means, “spiritual supervisor” or “someone who takes care of the spiritual needs of a group of believers” or “person who oversees the spiritual needs of the Church.”

(See also: [church](#), [Church](#), [elder](#), [pastor](#), [shepherd](#), [to shepherd](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

ox, oxen

Definition:

An “ox” refers to a type of cattle that is specifically trained to do agricultural work. The plural of this term is “oxen.” Usually oxen are male and have been castrated.

- Throughout the Bible, oxen are depicted as animals tied together by a yoke to pull a cart or a plow.
- Oxen working together under a yoke was such a common occurrence in the Bible that the phrase “to be under a yoke” became a metaphor for hard work and labor.
- A bull is also a male type of cattle, but it has not been castrated and has not been trained as a work animal.

(See also: [cow](#), [calf](#), [bull](#), [cattle](#), [yoke](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

patient, patience

Definition:

The terms “patient” and “patience” refer to persevering through difficult circumstances. Often patience involves waiting.

- When people are patient with someone, it means they are loving that person and forgiving whatever faults that person has.
- The Bible teaches God’s people to be patient when facing difficulties and to be patient with each other.
- Because of his mercy, God is patient with people, even though they are sinners who deserve to be punished.

(See also: [endure](#), [endurance](#), [forgive](#), [forgiveness](#), [persevere](#), [perseverance](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Paul, Saul

Facts:

Paul was a leader of the early church who was sent by Jesus to take the good news to many other people groups.

- Paul was a Jew who was born in the Roman city of Tarsus, and was therefore also a Roman citizen.
- Paul was originally called by his Jewish name, Saul.
- Saul became a Jewish religious leader and arrested Jews who became Christians because he thought they were dishonoring God by believing in Jesus.
- Jesus revealed himself to Saul in a blinding light and told him to stop hurting Christians.
- Saul believed in Jesus and began teaching his fellow Jews about him.
- Later, God sent Saul to teach non-Jewish people about Jesus and started churches in different cities and provinces of the Roman empire. At this time he started being called by the Roman name “Paul.”
- Paul also wrote letters to encourage and teach Christians in the churches in these cities. Several of these letters are in the New Testament.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Christian](#), [Jewish Leaders](#), [Rome](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[45-06]** A young man named **Saul** agreed with the people who killed Stephen and guarded their robes while they threw stones at him.
- **[46-01]** **Saul** was the young man who guarded the robes of the men who killed Stephen. He did not believe in Jesus, so he persecuted the believers.
- **[46-02]** While **Saul** was on his way to Damascus, a bright light from heaven shone all around him, and he fell to the ground. **Saul** heard someone say, “**Saul! Saul!** Why do you persecute me?”
- **[46-05]** So Ananias went to **Saul**, placed his hands on him, and said, “Jesus who appeared to you on your way here, sent me to you so that you can regain your sight and be filled with the Holy Spirit.” **Saul** immediately was able to see again, and Ananias baptized him.
- **[46-06]** Right away, **Saul** began preaching to the Jews in Damascus, saying, “Jesus is the Son of God!”
- **[46-09]** Barnabas and **Saul** went there (Antioch) to teach these new believers more about Jesus and to strengthen the church.

- **[47-01]** As **Saul** traveled throughout the Roman Empire, he began to use his Roman name, "**Paul.**"
- **[47-14]** **Paul** and other Christian leaders traveled to many cities, preaching and teaching people the good news about Jesus.

peace, peaceful

Definition:

The term “peace” refers to a state of being or a feeling of having no conflict, anxiety, or fearfulness. A person who is “peaceful” feels calm and assured of being safe and secure.

- “Peace” can also refer to a time when people groups or countries are not at war with each other. These people are said to have “peaceful relations.”
- To “make peace” with a person or a group of people means to take actions to cause fighting to stop.
- A “peacemaker” is someone who does and says things to influence people to live at peace with each other.
- To be “at peace” with other people means being in a state of not fighting against those people.
- A good or right relationship between God and people happens when God saves people from their sin. This is called having “peace with God.”
- The greeting “grace and peace” was used by the apostles in their letters to their fellow believers as a blessing.
- The term “peace” can also refer to being in a good relationship with other people or with God.

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- [15-06] God had commanded the Israelites not to make a **peace** treaty with any of the people groups in Canaan.
- [15-12] Then God gave Israel **peace** along all its borders.
- [16-03] Then God provided a deliverer who rescued them from their enemies and brought **peace** to the land.
- [21-13] He (Messiah) would die to receive the punishment for other people’s sin. His punishment would bring **peace** between God and people.
- [48-14] David was the king of Israel, but Jesus is the king of the entire universe! He will come again and rule his kingdom with justice and **peace**, forever.
- [50-17] Jesus will rule his kingdom with **peace** and justice, and he will be with his people forever.

perfect**Definition:**

In the Bible, the term “perfect” means to be mature in our Christian life. To perfect something means to work at it until it is excellent and without flaws.

- Being perfect and mature means that a Christian is obedient, not sinless.
- The term “perfect” also has the meaning of being “complete” or “whole.”
- The New Testament book of James states that persevering through trials will produce completeness and maturity in the believer.
- When Christians study the Bible and obey it, they will become more spiritually perfect and mature because they will be more like Christ in their character.

Translation Suggestions:

- This term could be translated as “without flaw” or “without error” or “flawless” or “without fault.” or “not having any faults.”

Bible References:

Waiting

persecute, persecution

Definition:

The terms “persecute” and “persecution” refer to continually treating a person or a certain group of people in a harsh way that causes harm to them.

- Persecution can be against one person or many people and usually involves repeated, persistent attacks.
- The Israelites were persecuted by many different people groups Who attacked them, captured them, and stole things from them.
- People often persecute other people who have different religious beliefs or who are weaker.
- The Jewish religious leaders persecuted Jesus because they did not like what he was teaching.
- After Jesus went back to heaven, the Jewish religious leaders and the Roman government persecuted his followers.
- The term “persecute” could also be translated as “keep oppressing” or “treat harshly” or “continually mistreat.”
- Ways to translate “persecution” could include, “harsh mistreatment” or “oppression” or “persistent hurtful treatment”

(See also: [Christian](#), [church](#), [Church](#), [Jewish leaders](#), [Jewish authorities](#), [religious leaders](#), [oppress](#), [oppression](#), [oppressor](#), [Rome](#), [Roman](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[33-07]** “The rocky ground is a person who hears God’s word and accepts it with joy. But when he experiences hardship or **persecution**, he falls away.”
- **[45-06]** That day many people in Jerusalem started **persecuting** the followers of Jesus, so the believers fled to other places.
- **[46-02]** Saul heard someone say, “Saul! Saul! Why do you **persecute** me?” Saul asked, “Who are you, Master?” Jesus replied to him, “I am Jesus. You are **persecuting** me!”
- **[46-04]** But Ananias said, “Master, I have heard how this man has **persecuted** the believers.”

Pilate

Facts:

Pilate was the governor of the Roman province of Judea who sentenced Jesus to death.

- Because Pilate was the governor, he had the authority to put criminals to death.
- The Jewish religious leaders wanted Pilate to crucify Jesus, so they lied and said that Jesus was a criminal.
- Pilate realized that Jesus was not guilty, but he was afraid of the crowd and wanted to please them, so he ordered his soldiers to crucify Jesus.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [crucify](#), [governor](#), [govern](#), [proconsul](#), [government](#), [guilt](#), [guilty](#), [Judea](#), [Rome](#), [Roman](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[39-09]** Early the next morning, the Jewish leaders brought Jesus to **Pilate**, the Roman governor. They hoped that **Pilate** would condemn Jesus as guilty and sentenced him to be killed. **Pilate** asked Jesus, “Are you the King of the Jews?”
- **[39-10]** **Pilate** said, “What is truth?”
- **[39-11]** After speaking with Jesus, **Pilate** went out to the crowd and said, “I find no guilt in this man.” But the Jewish leaders and the crowd shouted, “Crucify him!” **Pilate** replied, “He is not guilty.” But they shouted even louder. Then **Pilate** said a third time, “He is not guilty!”
- **[39-12]** **Pilate** became afraid that the crowd would begin to riot, so he ordered his soldiers to crucify Jesus.
- **[40-02]** **Pilate** commanded that a sign be put above Jesus’ head that read, “King of the Jews.”
- **[41-02]** **Pilate** said, “Take some soldiers and make the tomb as secure as you can.”

pillar, column

Definition:

The term “pillar” usually refers to a large vertical structure that is used to hold up a roof or other part of a building. Another word for “pillar” is “column.”

- In Bible times, pillars used as support in buildings were normally carved from a single piece of stone.
- When Samson in the Old Testament was captured by the Philistines, he destroyed their pagan temple by pushing the supporting pillars and causing the temple to collapse.
- The word “pillar” sometimes refers to a large stone or boulder that is set up as a memorial to mark a grave or to mark the place where an important event happened.
- It can also refer to an idol that was made to worship a false god. It is another name for a “carved image” and could be translated as “statue.”
- The term “pillar” is used to refer to something that is shaped like a pillar, such as the “pillar of fire” that led the Israelites at night through the desert or the “pillar of salt” that Lot’s wife became after she looked back at the city.
- AS a structure supporting a building, the term “pillar” or “column” could be translated as “upright stone support beam” or “supporting stone structure.”
- Other uses of “pillar” could be translated as “statue” or “pile” or “mound” or “monument” or “tall mass,” depending on the context.

(See also: [foundation](#), [founded](#), [idol](#), [idolatrous](#), [image](#), [carved image](#), [carved figure](#), [cast metal figure](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

power, powers

Definition:

The term “power” refers to the ability to do things or make things happen, often using great strength. “Powers” refers to people or spirits who have great ability to cause things to happen.

- The “power of God” refers to God’s ability to do everything, especially things that are not possible for people to do.
- God has complete power over everything that he has created.
- God gives his people power to do what he wants, so that when they heal people or do other miracles, they do this by the power of God.
- Because Jesus and the Holy Spirit are also God, they have this same power.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, the term “power” could also be translated as “ability” or “strength” or “energy” or “ability to do miracles” or “control.”
- Possible ways to translate the term “powers” could include, “powerful beings” or “controlling spirits” or “those who control others.”
- An expression like “save us from the power of our enemies” could be translated as, “save us from being oppressed by our enemies” or “rescue us from being controlled by our enemies.” In this case, “power” has the meaning of using one’s strength to control and oppress others.

(See also: [Holy Spirit](#), [Spirit of God](#), [Spirit of the Lord](#), [Jesus](#), [Jesus Christ](#), [Christ Jesus](#), [miracle](#), [wonder](#), [sign](#),)

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- [22-05] The angel explained, “The Holy Spirit will come to you, and the **power** of God will overshadow you. So the baby will be holy, the Son of God.”
- [26-01] After overcoming Satan’s temptations, Jesus returned in the **power** of the Holy Spirit to the region of Galilee where he lived.
- [32-15] Immediately Jesus realized that **power** had gone out from him.
- [42-11] Forty days after Jesus rose from the dead, he told his disciples, “Stay in Jerusalem until my Father gives you **power** when the Holy Spirit comes on you.”
- [43-06] “Men of Israel, Jesus was a man who did many mighty signs and wonders by the **power** of God, as you have seen and already know.”
- [44-08] Peter answered them, “This man stands before you healed by the **power** of Jesus the Messiah.”

pray, prayer

Definition:

The terms “pray” and “prayer” refer to talking with God. This term is also used to refer to people trying to talk to a false god.

- People can pray silently, talking to God with their thoughts or they can pray aloud, speaking to God with their voice. Sometimes prayers are written down, such as when David wrote his prayers in the book of Psalms.
- Prayer can include asking God for mercy, for help with a problem, for wisdom in making decisions.
- Often people ask God to heal people who are sick or who need his help in other ways.
- People also thank and praise God when they are praying to him.
- Praying includes confessing our sins to God and asking him to forgive us.
- Talking to God is sometimes called “communing” with him as our spirit communicates with his spirit, sharing our emotions and enjoying his presence.
- This term could be translated as “talking to God” or “communicating with God.” The translation of this term should be able to include praying that is silent.

(See: [false god](#), [foreign god](#), [god](#), [goddess](#), [forgive](#), [forgiveness](#), [praise](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- [06-05] Isaac **prayed** for Rebekah, and God allowed her to get pregnant with twins.
- [13-12] But Moses **prayed** for them, and God listened to his **prayer** and did not destroy them.
- [19-08] Then the prophets of Baal **prayed** to Baal, “Hear us, O Baal!”
- [21-07] Priests also **prayed** to God for the people.
- [38-11] Jesus told his disciples to **pray** that they would not enter into temptation.
- [43-13] The disciples continually listened to the teaching of the apostles, spent time together, ate together, and **prayed** with each other.
- [49-18] God tells you to **pray**, to study his word, to worship him with other Christians, and to tell others what he has done for you.

preach

Definition:

To speak to a group of people, teaching them about God and urging them to obey him.

- Often preaching is done by one person to a large group of people. It is usually spoken, not written.
- “Preaching” and “teaching” are similar, but are not exactly the same.
- “Preaching” mainly refers to publicly proclaiming spiritual or moral truth, and urging the audience to respond. “Teaching” is a term that emphasizes instruction, that is, giving people information or teaching them how to do something.
- The term “preach” is usually used with the word “gospel.”
- What a person has preached to others can also be referred to in general as his “teachings.”

(See also: [good news](#), [gospel](#), [Jesus](#), [Jesus Christ](#), [Christ Jesus](#), [John \(the Baptist\)](#), [kingdom of God](#), [kingdom of heaven](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- [24-02] He (John) **preached** to them, saying, “Repent, for the Kingdom of God is near!”
- [30-01] Jesus sent his apostles to **preach** and to teach people in many different villages.
- [38-01] About three years after Jesus first began **preaching** and teaching publicly, Jesus told his disciples that he wanted to celebrate this Passover with them in Jerusalem, and that he would be killed there.
- [45-06] But in spite of this, they **preached** about Jesus everywhere they went.
- [45-07] He (Philip) went to Samaria where he preached about Jesus and many people were saved.
- [46-06] Right away, Saul began **preaching** to the Jews in Damascus, saying, “Jesus is the Son of God!”
- [46-10] Then they sent them off to **preach** the good news of Jesus in many other places.
- [47-14] Paul and other Christian leaders traveled to many cities, **preaching** and teaching people the good news about Jesus.
- [50-02] When Jesus was living on earth he said, “My disciples will **preach** the good news about the kingdom of God to people everywhere in the world, and then the end will come.”

proclaim, proclamation

Definition:

To proclaim is to announce or declare something publicly and boldly.

- Often in the Bible, “proclaim” means to announce publicly something that God has commanded, or to tell others about God and how great he is.
- In the New Testament, the apostles proclaimed the good news about Jesus to many people in many different cities and regions.
- The term “proclaim” can also be used for decrees made by kings or for denouncing evil in a public way.
- Other ways to translate “proclaim” could include “announce” or “openly preach” or “publicly declare.”
- The term “proclamation” could also be translated as, “announcement” or “public preaching.”

(See: [preach](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

profane

Definition:

To profane something means to act in a way that defiles, pollutes, or disrespects something that is holy.

- A profane person is one who acts in a way that is unholy and dishonoring of God.
- The verb “to profane” could be translated as “to treat as unholy” or “to be irreverent toward” or “to dishonor.”
- God told the Israelites that they “profaned” themselves with idols, meaning that the people were making themselves “unclean” or “dishonored” by this sin. They were also dishonoring God.
- Depending on the context, the adjective “profane” could be translated as “dishonoring” or “godless” or “unholy.”

(See also: [defile](#), [be defiled](#), [holy](#), [holiness](#), [unclean](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

prophet, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess

Definition:

A “prophet” is a man who speaks God’s messages to people. A woman who does this is called a “prophetess.”

- Often prophets warned people to turn away from their sins and obey God.
- A “prophecy” is the message that the prophet speaks. To “prophesy” means to speak God’s messages.
- Often the message of a prophecy was about something that would happen in the future.
- Many prophecies in the Old Testament have already been fulfilled.
- In the Bible the collection of books written by prophets are sometimes referred to as “the prophets.”
- For example, the phrase, “the law and the prophets” is a way of referring to all the Hebrew scriptures, which are also known as the “Old Testament.”
- An older term for a prophet was “seer” or “someone who sees.”
- Sometimes the term “seer” refers to a false prophet or to someone who practices divination.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “prophet” could be translated as “God’s spokesman” or “man who speaks for God” or “man who speaks God’s messages.”
- A “seer” could be translated as, “person who sees visions” or “man who sees the future from God.”
- The term “prophetess” could be translated as, “spokeswoman for God” or “woman who speaks for God” or “woman who speaks God’s messages.”
- Ways to translate “prophecy” could include, “message from God” or “prophet message.”
- The term “prophesy” could be translated as “speak words from God” or “tell God’s message.”
- The figurative expression, “law and the prophets” could also be translated as, “the books of the law and of the prophets” or “everything written about God and his people, including God’s laws and what his prophets preached.” (See: [Synecdoche](#))
- When referring to a prophet (or seer) of a false god, it may be necessary to translate this as “false prophet (seer)” or “prophet (seer) of a false god” or “prophet of Baal,” for example.

(See also: [Baal](#), [divination](#), [diviner](#), [soothsaying](#), [soothsayer](#), [false god](#), [foreign god](#), [god](#), [goddess](#), [false prophet](#), [fulfill](#), [law](#), [law of Moses](#), [God’s law](#), [law of Yahweh](#), [vision](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- [12-12] When the Israelites saw that the Egyptians were dead, they trusted in God and believed that Moses was a **prophet** of God.
- [17-13] God was very angry about what David had done, so he sent the **prophet** Nathan to tell David how evil his sin was.
- [19-01] Throughout the history of the Israelites, God sent them **prophets**. The **prophets** heard messages from God and then told the people God's messages.
- [19-06] All the people of the entire kingdom of Israel, including the 450 **prophets** of Baal, came to Mount Carmel.
- [19-17] Most of the time, the people did not obey God. They often mistreated the **prophets** and sometimes even killed them.
- [21-09] The **prophet** Isaiah **prophesied** that the Messiah would be born from a virgin.
- [43-05] "This fulfills the **prophecy** made by the **prophet** Joel in which God said, 'In the last days, I will pour out my Spirit.'"
- [43-07] "This fulfills the **prophecy** which says, 'You will not let your Holy One rot in the grave.'"
- [48-12] Moses was a great **prophet** who proclaimed the word of God. But Jesus is the greatest **prophet** of all. He is the Word of God.
-

proud, pride, prideful

Definition:

The terms “proud” and “prideful” refer to a person thinking too highly of himself, and especially, thinking that he is better than other people.

- A proud person often does not admit his own faults. He is not humble.
- Pride can lead to disobeying God in other ways.
- The terms “proud” and “pride” can also be used in a positive sense, such as being “proud of” what someone else has achieved and being “proud of” your children. The expression, “take pride in your work” means to find joy in doing your work well.
- Someone can be proud of what he has done without being prideful about it. Some languages have different words for these two different meanings of “pride.”
- The term “prideful” is always negative, with the meaning of being “arrogant” or “conceited” or “self-important.”

Translation Suggestions:

- The noun “pride” could be translated as, “arrogance” or “conceit” or “self-importance.”
- In other contexts, “pride” could be translated as, “joy” or “satisfaction” or “pleasure.”
- To be “proud of” could also be translated as, “happy with” or “satisfied with” or “joyful about (the accomplishments of).”
- The phrase “take pride in your work” could be translated as, “find satisfaction in doing your work well.”
- The expression, “take pride in Yahweh” could also be translated as, “be delighted about all the wonderful things Yahweh has done” “be happy about how amazing Yahweh is.”

(See also: [arrogant](#), [humble](#), [humility](#), [joy](#), [joyful](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[04-02]** They were very **proud**, and they did not care about what God said.
- **[34-10]** Then Jesus said, “I tell you the truth, God heard the tax collector’s prayer and declared him to be righteous. But he did not like the prayer of the religious leader. God will humble everyone who is **proud**, and he will lift up whoever humbles himself.”

pure, purify, purification

Definition:

To be “pure” means to have no flaw or to have nothing mixed in that is not supposed to be there. To purify something is to cleanse it and remove anything that contaminates or pollutes it.

- In regard to Old Testament laws, “purify” and “purification” refer mainly to the cleansing from things that make an object or a person ritually unclean, such as disease, body fluids, or childbirth.
- The Old Testament also had laws telling people how to be purified from sin, usually by the sacrifice of an animal. This was only temporary and the sacrifices had to be repeated over and over again.
- In the New Testament, to be purified often refers to being cleansed from sin.
- The only way that people can be completely and permanently purified from sin is through repenting and receiving God’s forgiveness, through trusting in Jesus and his sacrifice.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “purify” could be translated as “make pure” or “cleanse” or “cleanse from all contamination” or “get rid of all sin.”
- A phrase such as, “when the time for their purification was over” could be translated as, “when they had purified themselves by waiting the required number of days.”
- The phrase, “provided purification for sins” could be translated as, “provided a way for people to be completely cleansed from their sin.”
- Other ways to translate “purification” could include, “cleansing” or “spiritual washing” or “becoming ritually clean.”

(See: [atonement](#), [atone](#), [clean](#), [cleanse](#), [spirit](#), [spiritual](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

ransom

Definition:

The term “ransom” refers to a sum of money or other payment that is demanded or paid for the release of a person who is held captive.

- As a verb, “to ransom” means to make a payment or to do something self-sacrificially in order to rescue someone who has been captured, enslaved or imprisoned. This meaning of “buy back” is similar to the meaning of “redeem.”
- Jesus allowed himself to be killed as a ransom to free sinful people from their enslavement to sin. This act of God buying back his people through paying the penalty of their sin is also called “redemption” in the Bible.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “to ransom” could also be translated as, “to pay to release” or “to pay a price to free” or “to buy back” someone.
- The phrase “to pay a ransom” could be translated as “to pay the price (of freedom)” or “to pay the penalty (to free people)” or “to make the required payment.”
- The noun “ransom” could be translated as “a buying back” or “a penalty paid” or “the price paid” (to free or buy back people or land).
- The terms “ransom” and “redemption” have the same meaning but are sometimes used slightly differently in English. Other languages may have only one term they will use to translate this concept.
- Make sure this is translated differently from “atonement.”

(See also: [atonement](#), [atone](#), [redeem](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

rebel, rebellious, rebellion

Definition:

The term “rebel” means to refuse to submit to someone’s authority. A “rebellious” person often disobeys and does evil things. This kind of person is called “a rebel.”

- A person is rebelling when he does something the authorities over him have told him not to do.
- A person can also rebel by refusing to do what the authorities have commanded him to do.
- Sometimes people rebel against their government or leader who is ruling over them.
- The term “to rebel” could also be translated as “to disobey” or “to revolt,” depending on the context.
- “Rebellious” could also be translated as “continually disobedient” or “refusing to obey.”
- The term “rebellion” means “refusal to obey” or “disobedience” or “law-breaking.”
- The phrase “the rebellion” or “a rebellion” can also refer to an organized group of people who publicly rebel against ruling authorities by breaking the law and attacking leaders and other people. Often they try to get other people to join them in rebelling.

:(See also: [authority](#), [disobey](#), [disobedient](#), [disobedience](#), [governor](#), [govern](#), [proconsul](#), [government](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[14-14]** After the Israelites had wandered in the wilderness for forty years, all of them who had **rebelled** against God were dead.
- **[18-07]** Ten of the tribes of the nation of Israel **rebelled** against Rehoboam.
- **[18-09]** Jeroboam **rebelled** against God and caused the people to sin.
- **[18-13]** Most of the people of Judah also **rebelled** against God and worshiped other gods.
- **[20-07]** But after a few years, the king of Judah **rebelled** against Babylon.
- **[45-03]** Then he (Stephen) said, “You stubborn and **rebellious** people always reject the Holy Spirit, just as your ancestors always rejected God and killed his prophets.

receive

Definition:

The term “receive” generally means to get or accept something that is given, offered, or presented.

- To “receive” can also mean to suffer or experience something, as in “he received punishment for what he did.”
- There is also a special sense in which we can “receive” a person. For example, to “receive” guests or visitors means to welcome them and to treat them with honor in order to build a relationship with them.
- To “receive the gift of the Holy Spirit” means we are given the Holy Spirit and welcome him to work in and through our lives.
- To “receive Jesus” means to accept God’s offer of salvation through Jesus Christ.
- When a blind person “receives his sight” means that God healed him and enabled him to see.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, “receive” can be translated as “accept” or “welcome” or “experience” or “be given.”
- The expression, “you will receive power” could be translated as, “you will be given power” or “God will give you power” or “power will be given to you (by God)” or “God will cause the Holy Spirit to work powerfully in you.”
- The phrase “received his sight” could also be translated as, “was able to see” or “became able to see again” or “God healed him so that he was able to see.”

(See also: [Holy Spirit](#), [Spirit of God](#), [Spirit of the Lord](#), [Jesus](#), [Jesus Christ](#), [Christ Jesus](#), [lord](#), [master](#), [sir](#), [save](#), [safe](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- [21-13] The prophets also said that the Messiah would be perfect, having no sin. He would die to **receive** the punishment for other people’s sin. His punishment would bring peace between God and people.
- [45-05] As Stephen was dying, he cried out, “Jesus, **receive** my spirit.”
- [49-06] He (Jesus) taught that some people will receive him and be saved, but others will not.
- [49-10] When Jesus died on the cross, he **received** your punishment.
- [49-13] God will save everyone who believes in Jesus and **receives** him as their Master.

reign

Definition:

The term “to reign” means to rule as a king over the people of a particular country or kingdom. The reign of a king is the time period during which he is ruling.

- The term ”reign is also used to refer to God reigning as king over the entire world.
- God allowed human kings to reign over Israel when they rejected him as their king.
- When Jesus Christ returns, he will openly reign as king over the whole world and Christians will reign with Him.
- This term could also be translated as “absolute rule” or “rule as king” or “governing as king.”

(See also: [king](#), [kingdom](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

reject

Definition:

To “reject” someone or something means to refuse to accept that person or thing.

- The term “reject” can also mean to “refuse to believe in” something.
- To reject God also means to refuse to obey him.
- When the Israelites rejected Moses’ leadership, it means that they were rebelling against his authority. They did not want to obey him.
- The Israelites showed that they were rejecting God when they worshiped false gods.
- The term “push away” is the literal meaning of this word. Other languages may have a similar expression that means to reject or refuse to believe someone or something.

Translation Suggestions

- Depending on the context, the term “reject” could also be translated by, “not accept” or “stop helping” or “refuse to obey” or “stop obeying.”
- In the expression, “stone that the builders rejected,” the term “rejected” could be translated as, “refused to use” or “did not accept” or “threw away” or “got rid of as worthless.”
- In the context of the people rejecting God’s commandments, this could be translated as “refused to obey” his commands or “stubbornly chose to not accept” God’s laws.

(See also: [command](#), [to command](#), [commandment](#), [disobey](#), [disobedient](#), [disobedience](#), [obey](#), [obedient](#), [obedience](#), [stiff-necked](#), [stubborn](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

reproach

Definition:

To reproach someone means to criticize or disapprove of that person's character or behavior. A reproach is the negative comment about the person.

- Saying that a person is “above reproach” or “beyond reproach” or “without reproach” means that this person behaves in a God-honoring way and there is little or nothing that could be said in criticism of him.
- The word “reproach” can also be translated as “accusation” or “shame” or “disgrace.”
- “To reproach” could also be translated as, “to rebuke” or “to accuse” or “to criticize,” depending on the context.

(See also: [accuse](#), [accusation](#), [accuser](#), [rebuke](#), [shame](#), [shameful](#), [ashamed](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

reveal, revelation

Definition:

The term “reveal” means to cause something to be known. A “revelation” is something that has been made known.

- In the Bible, the term “reveal” is often used to describe how God has made himself known to people.
- God has revealed himself through everything he has created and through his communication with people by spoken and written messages.
- God also reveals himself through dreams or visions.
- When Paul says that he received the gospel by “revelation from Jesus Christ,” he means that Jesus himself explained the gospel to him.
- The New Testament book “Revelation” is about God revealing events that will happen in the end times. He revealed this to the apostle John through visions.

Translation Suggestions:

- Other ways to translate “reveal” could include, “make known” or “disclose” or “show clearly.”
- Depending on the context, possible ways to translate “revelation” could be, “communication from God” or “things that God has revealed” or “teachings about God.” It is best to keep the meaning of “reveal” in this word.
- The phrase, “where there is no revelation” could be translated as, “when God does not reveal himself to people” or “when God has not spoken to people” or “among people whom God has not communicated to.”

(See also: [good news, gospel](#), [good news, gospel](#), [dream](#), [vision](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

righteous, righteousness

Definition:

The terms “righteous” and “righteousness” refer to God’s absolute goodness, justice, faithfulness, and love. Because God is righteous, he must condemn sin.

- These terms are also often used to describe a person who obeys God and is morally good. However, because all people have sinned, no one except God is completely righteous.
- Examples of people who the Bible calls “righteous” include Noah, Job, Abraham, Zachariah, and Elisabeth.
- When people trust in Jesus to save them, God cleanses them from their sins and declares them to be righteous based on Jesus’ righteousness.

Translation Suggestions:

- When referring to God, the term “righteous” could be translated as “perfectly good and just” or “always acting rightly.”
- God’s “righteousness” could also be translated as, “perfect faithfulness and goodness.”
- When referring to people who are obedient to God, the term “righteous” could also be translated as “morally good” or “just” or “living a God-pleasing life.”
- The phrase, “the righteous” could also be translated as, “righteous people” or “God-fearing people.”
- Depending on the context, “righteousness” could also be translated with a word or phrase that means, “goodness” or “being perfect before God” or “acting in a right way by obeying God” or “doing perfectly good
- Sometimes “the righteous” is used figuratively and refers to “people who think they are good” or “people who seem to be righteous.”

(See also: [good](#), [goodness](#), [holy](#), [holiness](#), [evil](#), [wicked](#), [wickedness](#), [just](#), [justice](#), [justly](#), [faithful](#), [faithfulness](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[03-02]** But Noah found favor with God. He was a **righteous** man, living among wicked people.
- **[04-08]** God declared that Abram was **righteous** because he believed in God’s promise.
- **[17-02]** David was a humble and **righteous** man who trusted and obeyed God.
- **[23-01]** Joseph, the man Mary was engaged to, was a **righteous** man.
- **[50-10]** Then the **righteous** ones will shine like the sun in the kingdom of God their Father.”

ruin, ruins**Definition:**

To “ruin” something means to spoil, destroy, or cause to be useless. The term “ruin” or “ruins” refers to the rubble and spoiled remains of something that has been destroyed.

- The prophet Zephaniah spoke about the day of God’s wrath as a “day of ruin” when the world will be judged and punished.
- The book of Proverbs says that ruin and destruction await those who are ungodly.
- Depending on the context, “to ruin” could be translated as “to destroy” or “to spoil” or “to make useless” or “to break.”
- The term “ruin” or “ruins” could be translated as “rubble” or “broken-down buildings” or “destroyed city” or “devastation” or “brokenness” or “destruction,” depending on the context.

Bible References:

Waiting

ruler, rulers, rule

Definition:

The term “ruler” is a general reference to a person who has authority over other people, such as a leader of a country, kingdom, or religious group.

- In the Old Testament, a king was also referred to with the general term “ruler,” as in the phrase, “appointed him ruler over Israel.”
- God is referred to as the ultimate ruler, who rules over all other rulers.
- In the New Testament, the leader of a synagogue was called a “ruler.”
- Another type of ruler in the New Testament was a “governor.”
- Depending on the context, “ruler” could be translated as “leader” or “person who has authority over.”
- The action “to rule” means to “lead” to “have authority over.” It is means the same thing as “reign” when referring a king ruling.

(See also: [authority](#), [governor](#), [govern](#), [proconsul](#), [government](#), [king](#), [synagogue](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

sanctify, sanctification

Definition:

To sanctify is to set apart or to make holy. Sanctification is the process of being made holy.

- In the Old Testament, certain people and things were sanctified, or set apart, for service to God.
- The New Testament teaches that God sanctifies people who believe in Jesus. That is, he makes them holy and sets them apart to serve him.
- Believers in Jesus are also commanded to sanctify themselves to God, to be holy in everything they do.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, the term, “to sanctify” can be translated as “to set apart” or “to make holy” or “to purify.”
- When people sanctify themselves, it means that they purify themselves and dedicate themselves to God’s service. Often the word “consecrate” is used in the Bible with this meaning.
- With the meaning of “consecrate” this term could be translated as “dedicate someone (or something) to God’s service.”
- Depending on the context, the phrase, “your sanctification” could be translated as “making you holy” or “setting you apart (for God)” or “what makes you holy.”

(See also: [consecrate](#), [holy](#), [holiness](#), [set apart](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Satan, devil, evil one

Facts:

The devil is a spirit being that God created, but he rebelled against God and became God's enemy. The devil is also called "Satan" and "the evil one."

- The devil hates God and all that God created, because he wants to take the place of God and be worshiped as God.
- Satan tempts people to rebel against God.
- God sent his Son, Jesus to rescue people from Satan's control.
- The name "Satan" means "adversary" or "enemy."
- The word "devil" means "accuser."

Translation Suggestions:

- The word "devil" could also be translated as "the accuser" or "the evil one" or "the king of evil spirits" or "the chief evil spirit."
- "Satan" can be translated as "Opponent" or "Adversary" or some other name that shows that he is the devil.
- These terms should be translated differently from demon and evil spirit.
- Consider how these terms are translated in a local or national language. (See: [How to Translate Unknowns](#))

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [demon](#), [evil spirit](#), [unclean spirit](#), [evil](#), [wicked](#), [wickedness](#), [kingdom of God](#), [kingdom of heaven](#), [tempt](#), [temptation](#),)

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[21-01]** The snake who deceived Eve was **Satan**. The promise meant that the Messiah who would come would defeat **Satan** completely.
- **[25-06]** Then **Satan** showed Jesus all the kingdoms of the world and all their glory and said, "I will give you all this if you bow down and worship me."
- **[25-08]** Jesus did not give in to **Satan's** temptations, so **Satan** left him.
- **[33-06]** So Jesus explained, "The seed is the word of God. The path is a person who hears God's word, but does not understand it, and the **devil** takes the word from him."
- **[38-07]** After Judas took the bread, **Satan** entered into him.

- **[48-04]** God promised that one of Eve's descendants would crush **Satan's** head, and **Satan** would wound his heel. This meant that **Satan** would kill the Messiah, but God would raise him to life again, and then the Messiah will crush the power of **Satan** forever.
- **[49-15]** God has taken you out of **Satan's** kingdom of darkness and put you into God's kingdom of light.
- **[50-09]** "The weeds represent the people who belong to the **evil one**. The enemy who planted the weeds represents the **devil**."
- **[50-10]** "When the world ends, the angels will gather together all the people who belong to the **devil** and throw them into a raging fire, where they will cry and grind their teeth in terrible suffering."
- **[50-15]** When Jesus returns, he will completely destroy **Satan** and his kingdom. He will throw **Satan** into hell where he will burn forever, along with everyone who chose to follow him rather than to obey God.

save, safe

Definition:

The term “save” refers to keeping someone from experiencing something bad or harmful. To “be safe” means to be protected from harm or danger.

- In a physical sense, people can be saved or rescued from harm, danger, or death.
- In a spiritual sense, if a person has been “saved,” it means that through Jesus’ death on the cross, God has forgiven him and rescued him from being punished in hell for his sin.
- People can save or rescue people from danger, but only God can save people from being punished eternally for their sins.

Translation Suggestions:

- Ways to translate “save” could include, “deliver” or “keep from harm” or “take out of harm’s way” or “keep from dying.”
- In the expression, “whoever would save his life,” the term “save” could also be translated as “preserve” or “protect.”
- The term “safe” could be translated as “protected from danger” or “in a place where nothing can harm.”

(See also: [cross](#), [deliver](#), [deliverer](#), [deliverance](#), [punish](#), [punishment](#), [salvation](#), [sin](#), [sinful](#), [sinner](#), [sinning](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[09-08]** Moses tried to **save** his fellow Israelite.
- **[11-02]** God provided a way to **save** the firstborn son of anyone who believed in him.
- **[12-05]** Moses told the Israelites, “Stop being afraid! God will fight for you today and **save** you.”
- **[12-13]** The Israelites sang many songs to celebrate their new freedom and to praise God because he **saved** them from the Egyptian army.
- **[16-17]** This pattern repeated many times: the Israelites would sin, God would punish them, they would repent, and God would send a deliverer to **save** them.
- **[44-08]** “You crucified Jesus, but God raised him to life again! You rejected him, but there is no other way to be **saved** except through the power of Jesus!”
- **[47-11]** The jailer trembled as he came to Paul and Silas and asked, “What must I do to be **saved**?” Paul answered, “Believe in Jesus, the Master, and you and your family will be **saved**.”

- [49-12] Good works cannot **save** you.
- [49-13] God will **save** everyone who believes in Jesus and receives him as their Master. But he will not **save** anyone who does not believe in him.

Savior

Facts:

The term “Savior” refers to a person who saves or rescues others from danger. It can also refer to someone who gives strength to others or provides for them.

- In the Old Testament, God is referred to as Israel’s Savior because he often rescued them from their enemies, gave them strength, and provided them with what they needed to live.
- In the New Testament, “Savior” is used as a description or title for Jesus Christ because he saves people from being eternally punished for their sin. He also saves them from being controlled by their sin.

Translation Suggestions:

- If possible, “Savior” should be translated with a word that is related to the words “save” and “salvation.”
- Ways to translate this term could include, “the One who saves” or “God, who saves” or “who delivers from danger” or “who rescues from enemies” or “Jesus, the one who rescues (people) from sin.”

(See also: [deliver](#), [Jesus](#), [Jesus Christ](#), [Christ Jesus](#), [salvation](#), [save](#), [safe](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

self-control

Definition:

Self-control is the ability to control one's behavior in order to avoid sinning.

- It refers to good behavior, that is, avoiding sinful thoughts, speech, and actions.
- Self-control is a fruit or characteristic that the Holy Spirit gives to Christians.
- A person who is using self-control is able to stop himself from doing something wrong that he may want to do. God is the one who enables a person to have self-control.

(See also: [fruit](#), [fruitful](#), [Holy Spirit](#), [Spirit of God](#), [Spirit of the Lord](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

servant, slave, slavery

Definition:

The word for “servant” can also mean “slave” and refers to a person who works for another person, either by choice or by force. The surrounding text usually makes it clear whether a servant or a slave is being referred to.

- In Bible times, there was less of a difference between a servant and a slave than there is today. Both servants and slaves were an important part of their master’s household and many were treated almost like members of the family. Sometimes a servant would choose to become a lifetime servant to his master.
- A slave is a kind of servant who is the property of the person he works for. The person who buys a slave is called his “owner” or “master.” Some masters treat their slaves very cruelly, while other masters treat their slaves very well, like a servant who is a valued member of the household.
- In ancient times, some people willingly became slaves to a person they owed money to in order to pay off their debt to that person.
- In the Bible, the phrase “I am your servant” was used as a sign of respect and service to a person of higher rank, such as a king. It does not mean that the person speaking was an actual servant.
- In the Old Testament, God’s prophets and other people who worshiped God are often referred to as his “servants.”
- In the New Testament, people who obey God through faith in Christ are often called his “servants.”
- Christians are also called “slaves to righteousness,” which is a metaphor that compares the commitment to obey God to a slave’s commitment to obeying his master. (See: [Metaphor](#))

(See also: [commit](#), [committed](#), [commitment](#), [enslave](#), [in bondage](#), [household](#), [lord](#), [master](#), [sir](#), [obey](#), [obedient](#), [obedience](#), [righteous](#), [righteousness](#), [serve](#), [service](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[06-01]** When Abraham was very old and his son, Isaac, had grown to be a man, Abraham sent one of his **servants** back to the land where his relatives lived to find a wife for his son, Isaac.
- **[08-04]** The **slave** traders sold Joseph as a **slave** to a wealthy government official.
- **[09-13]** ”I (God) will send you (Moses) to Pharaoh so that you can bring the Israelites out of their **slavery** in Egypt.”

- [19-10] Then Elijah prayed, "O Yahweh, God of Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob, show us today that you are the God of Israel and that I am your **servant**."
- [29-03] "Since the **servant** could not pay the debt, the king said, 'Sell this man and his family as **slaves** to make payment on his debt.'"
- [35-06] "All my father's **servants** have plenty to eat, and yet here I am starving."
- [47-04] The **slave** girl kept yelling as they walked, "These men are servants of the Most High God."
- [50-04] Jesus also said, "A **servant** is not greater than his master."

serve, service

Definition:

The term “serve” means to do things to help other people. It can also mean to “worship.”

- In the context of a woman serving her guests, this term means “care for” or “serve food to” or “provide food for.”
- When Jesus told the disciples to serve the fish to the people, this could be translated as, “distribute to” or “hand out to” or “give to.”¹[comment_5adb7a6af206fdb7787dd58f4b215940](#)
- The term “service” refers to the act of serving. It can also be used to refer to a “meeting” of Christians as they worship God together.
- The term “serve” can also be translated as, “minister to” or “work for” or “take care of” or “obey,” depending on the context.
- “To serve God” can be translated as “to worship and obey God” or “to do the work that God has commanded.”
- To “serve tables” means to bring food to people who are sitting at tables.
- People who teach others about God are said to serve both God and the ones they are teaching.
- The apostle Paul wrote to the Corinthian Christians about how they used to “serve” the old covenant. This refers to obeying the laws of Moses.
- Now they “serve” the new covenant, that is, because of Jesus’ sacrifice on the cross, believers in Jesus are enabled by the Holy Spirit to please God and live holy lives.
- Paul talks about this in terms of their “service” to either the old or new covenant. This could be translated as “serving” or “obeying” or “devotion to.”

(See also: [covenant](#), [law](#), [law of Moses](#), [God’s law](#), [law of Yahweh](#), [servant](#), [slave](#), [slavery](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

sin, sinful, sinner, sinning

Definition:

The term “sin” refers to actions, thoughts, and words that are against God’s will and laws. Sin can also refer to not doing something that God wants us to do.

- Sin includes anything we do that does not obey or please God, even things that other people don’t know about.
- Thoughts and actions that disobey God’s will are called “sinful.”
- Because Adam sinned, all human beings are born with a sinful nature that controls them.
- A “sinner” is someone who sins, so every human being is a sinner.
- Sometimes the word “sinners” was used by religious people like the Pharisees to refer to people who didn’t keep the law as well as the Pharisees thought they should.
- The term “sinner” was also used for people who were considered to be worse sinners than other people. For example, this label was given to tax collectors and prostitutes.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “sin” could be translated with a word or phrase that means, “disobedience to God” or “going against God’s will” or “evil behavior and thoughts” or “wrongdoing.”
- “To sin” could also be translated as “to disobey God” or “to do wrong.”
- Depending on the context, “sinful” could be translated as “full of wrongdoing” or “wicked” or “immoral” or “evil” or “rebellious against God.”
- Depending on the context, the term “sinner” could be translated with a word or phrase that means, “person who sins” or “person who does wrong things” or “person who disobeys God” or “person who disobeys the law.”
- The term “sinners” could be translated by a word or phrase that means, “very sinful people” or “people considered to be very sinful” or “immoral people.”
- Ways to translate “tax collectors and sinners” could include, “people who collect money for the government, and other very sinful people” or “very sinful people, including (even) tax collectors.”
- In expressions like “slaves to sin” or “ruled by sin,” the term “sin” could be translated as “disobedience” or “evil desires and actions.”
- Make sure the translation of this term can include sinful behavior and thoughts, even those that other people don’t see or know about.
- The term “sin” should be general, and different from the terms for “wickedness” and “evil.”

(See also: [disobey](#), [disobedient](#), [disobedience](#), [evil](#), [wicked](#), [wickedness](#), [flesh](#), [tax collector](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- * **[03-15]** God said, "I promise I will never again curse the ground because of the evil things people do, or destroy the world by causing a flood, even though people are **sinful** from the time they are children."
- * **[13-12]** God was very angry with them because of their **sin** and planned to destroy them.
- * **[20-01]** The kingdoms of Israel and Judah both **sinned** against God. They broke the covenant that God made with them at Sinai.
- * **[21-13]** The prophets also said that the Messiah would be perfect, having no **sin**. He would die to receive the punishment for other people's **sin**.
- * **[35-01]** One day, Jesus was teaching many tax collectors and other **sinner**s who had gathered to hear him.
- * **[38-05]** Then Jesus took a cup and said, "Drink this. It is my blood of the New Covenant that is poured out for the forgiveness of **sins**."
- * **[43-11]** Peter answered them, "Every one of you should repent and be baptized in the name of Jesus Christ so that God will forgive your **sins**."
- * **[48-08]** We all deserve to die for our **sins**!
- * **[49-17]** Even though you are a Christian, you will still be tempted to **sin**. But God is faithful and says that if you confess your **sins**, he will forgive you. He will give you strength to fight against **sin**.

slander, slanderer

Definition:

To slander means to say negative, defaming things about another person.

- Slander may be a true report or a false accusation, but its effect is to cause others to think negatively of the person being slandered.
- Some of the words translated as “slander” mean: “speak against” or “spread an evil report” or “defame.”
- A slanderer is also called an “informer” or a “tale-bearer.”

(See also: [blasphemy](#), [blaspheme](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

snare, trap

Definition:

The terms “snare” and “trap” refer to devices that are used to catch animals and keep them from escaping. In the Bible, these terms are also used figuratively to talk about how sin and temptation are like hidden traps that catch people and harm them.

- A “snare” has a loop of rope or wire that suddenly pulls tight when an animal steps into it, ensnaring its leg.
- A “trap” usually made of metal or wood and has two parts that suddenly and powerfully close together in order to catch an animal so it can’t get away. Sometimes a trap can be a deep hole that has been made in order to get something to fall into it.
- Usually the snare or trap is hidden so that its prey is taken by surprise.
- The phrase “set a trap” means to get a trap ready to capture something.
- To “fall into a trap” refers to falling into a deep hole or pit that was dug and hidden in order to catch an animal.
- When used figuratively, being caught in a trap or snare is compared to how a person can suddenly become ensnared in a sin in the same way that an animal gets captured by a physical snare or trap.
- Just as an animal is endangered and hurt by being in a trap, so a person caught in the trap of sin is being harmed by that sin and needs to be set free.

(See also: [free](#), [freedom](#), [liberty](#), , [prey](#), [to prey on](#), [Satan](#), [devil](#), [evil one](#), [tempt](#), [temptation](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

son, son of

Definition:

The term “son” refers to a boy or man in relation to his parents. It can refer either to someone’s male offspring or to an adopted son.

- “Son” is often used figuratively in the Bible to refer to any male descendant, such as a grandson or great-grandson.
- The term “son” can also be used as a polite form of address to a boy or man who is younger.
- Sometimes “sons of God” is used in the New Testament to refer to believers in Christ.
- God calls Israel his “firstborn son.” This refers to God’s choosing of the nation of Israel to be his special people. It is through them that God’s message of redemption and salvation came, with the result that many other people have become his spiritual children.
- The phrase “son of” often has the figurative meaning, “having the characteristics of.” Examples of this include, “sons of the light,” “sons of disobedience,” “a son of peace,” and “sons of thunder.”
- The phrase “son of” is also used to tell who a person’s father is. This phrase is used in genealogies and many other places.
- Using “son of” to give the name of the father frequently helps distinguish people who have the same name. For example, “Azariah, son of Zadok” and “Azariah, son of Nathan” in 1 Kings 4, and “Azariah, son of Amaziah in 2 Kings 15 are three different men.

Translation Suggestions:

- In most occurrences of this term, it is best to translate “son” using the literal term in the language that is used to refer to a son.
- When translating the term “Son of God,” the project language’s common term for “son” should be used.
- When used to refer to a descendant rather than a direct son, the term “descendant” could be used, as in referring to Jesus as the “descendant of David” or in genealogies where sometimes “son” refers to a male descendant, not an actual son.
- Sometimes “sons” can be translated as “children,” when both males and females are being referred to. For example, “sons of God” could be translated as “children of God” since this expression also includes girls and women.
- The figurative expression “son of” could also be translated as “someone who has the characteristics of” or “someone who is like” or “someone who has” or “someone who acts like.”

(See also: [Azariah](#), [descendant](#), [descended from](#), [ancestor](#), [father](#), [forefather](#), [firstborn](#), [Son of God](#), [the Son](#), [Son](#), [sons of God](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[04-08]** God spoke to Abram and promised again that he would have a **son** and as many descendants as the stars in the sky.
- **[04-09]** God said, "I will give you a **son** from your own body."
- **[05-05]** About a year later, when Abraham was 100 years old and Sarah was 90, Sarah gave birth to Abraham's **son**.
- **[05-08]** When they reached the place of sacrifice, Abraham tied up his **son** Isaac and laid him on an altar. He was about to kill his **son** when God said, "Stop! Do not hurt the boy! Now I know that you fear me because you did not keep your only **son** from me."
- **[09-07]** When she saw the baby, she took him as her own **son**.
- **[11-06]** God killed every one of the Egyptians' firstborn **sons**.
- **[18-01]** After many years, David died, and his **son** Solomon began to rule.
- **[26-04]** "Is this the **son** of Joseph?" they said.

spirit, spiritual

Definition:

The term “spirit” refers to the non-physical part of people which cannot be seen. When a person dies, his spirit leaves his body. “Spirit” can also refer to an attitude or emotional state.

- The term “spirit” can refer to a being that does not have a physical body, especially an evil spirit.
- A person’s spirit is the part of him that can know God and believe in him.
- In general, the term “spiritual” describes anything in the non-physical world.
- In the Bible, it especially refers to anything that relates to God, specifically to the Holy Spirit.
- For example, “spiritual food” refers to God’s teachings that give nourishment to a person’s spirit, “spiritual wisdom” refers to the knowledge and righteous behavior that come from the power of the Holy Spirit.
- God is a spirit and he created other spirit beings who do not have physical bodies.
- Angels are spirit beings, including those who rebelled against God and became evil spirits.
- The term “spirit of” can also mean “having the characteristics of,” such as in, “spirit of wisdom” or “in the spirit of Elijah.”
- Examples of “spirit” as an attitude or emotion would include “spirit of fear” or “spirit of jealousy.”

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, some ways to translate “spirit” might include, “non-physical being” or “inside part” or “inner being.”
- In some contexts, the term “spirit” could be translated as “evil spirit” or “evil spirit being.”
- Sometimes the term “spirit” is used to express the feelings of a person as in, “my spirit was grieved in my inmost being.” This could also be translated as, “I felt grieved in my spirit” or “I felt deeply grieved.”
- The phrase “spirit of” could be translated as, “character of” or “influence of” or “attitude of” or “thinking (that is) characterized by.”
- Depending on the context, “spiritual” could be translated as, “non-physical” or “from the Holy Spirit” or “God’s” or “part of the non-physical world.”
- The figurative expression “spiritual milk” could also be translated as, “basic teachings from God” or “God’s teachings that nourish the spirit (like milk does).”
- The phrase “spiritual maturity” could be translated as “godly behavior that shows obedience to the Holy Spirit.”
- A “spiritual gift” could be translated as, “special ability that the Holy Spirit gives.”

(See also: [angel](#), [archangel](#), [demon](#), [evil spirit](#), [unclean spirit](#), [Holy Spirit](#), [Spirit of God](#), [Spirit of the Lord](#), [soul](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[13-03]** Three days later, after the people had prepared themselves **spiritually**, God came down on top of Mount Sinai with thunder, lightning, smoke, and a loud trumpet blast.
- **[40-07]** Then Jesus cried out, "It is finished! Father, I give my **spirit** into your hands." Then he bowed his head and gave up his **spirit**.
- **[45-05]** As Stephen was dying, he cried out, "Jesus, receive my **spirit**."
- **[48-07]** All the people groups are blessed through him, because everyone who believes in Jesus is saved from sin, and becomes a **spiritual** descendant of Abraham.

teach, teaching, teacher, taught**Definition:**

The terms “teach” and “teaching” refer to telling other people information they didn’t know before. Usually the information is given in a formal or systematic way.

- A “teacher” is someone who teaches. The past action of “teach” is “taught.”
- When Jesus was teaching, he was explaining things about God and his kingdom.
- Jesus’ disciples called him “Teacher” as a respectful form of address for someone who taught people about God.
- The information that is being taught can be shown or spoken.
- The term “doctrine” refers to a set of teachings from God about himself as well as God’s instructions about how to live. This could also be translated as “teachings from God” or “what God teaches us.”
- The phrase “what you have been taught” could also be translated as, “what these people have taught you” or “what God has taught you,” depending on the context.
- Other ways to translate “teach” could include “tell” or “explain” or “instruct.”
- Often this term can be translated as “teaching people about God.”

(See also: [instruct](#), [instruction](#), [teacher](#), [Teacher](#), [word of God](#), [word of Yahweh](#), [word of the Lord](#), [scripture](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

teacher, Teacher

Definition:

A teacher is a person who gives other people new information. Teachers help others to obtain and use both knowledge and skills.

- In the Bible, the word “teacher” is used in a special sense to refer to someone who teaches about God. It does not refer to a school teacher.
- People who learn from a teacher are called “students” or “disciples.”
- In some Bible translations, this term is capitalized (“Teacher”) when it is used as a title for Jesus.

Translation Suggestions:

- The usual word for a teacher can be used to translate this term, unless that word is only used for a school teacher.
- Some cultures may have a special title that is used for religious teachers, such as “Sir” or “Rabbi” or “Preacher.”

(See also: [disciple](#), [preach](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- [27-01] One day, an expert in the Jewish law came to Jesus to test him, saying, “**Teacher**, what must I do to inherit eternal life?”
- [28-01] One day a rich young ruler came up to Jesus and asked him, “Good **Teacher**, what must I do to have eternal life?”
- [37-02] After the two days had passed, Jesus said to his disciples, “Let’s go back to Judea.” “But **Teacher**,” the disciples answered, “Just a short time ago the people there wanted to kill you!”
- [38-14] Judas came to Jesus and said, “Greetings, **Teacher**,” and kissed him.
- [49-03] Jesus was also a great **teacher**, and he spoke with authority because he is the Son of God.

tempt, temptation

Definition:

To tempt someone is to try to get that person to do something wrong.

- A temptation is something that causes a person to want to do something wrong.
- People are tempted by their own sinful nature and by other people.
- Satan also tempts people to disobey God and to sin against God by doing wrong things.
- Satan tempted Jesus and tried to get him to do something wrong, but Jesus resisted all of Satan's temptations and never sinned.
- The term "tempt" is also used to refer to tempting God, which means to stubbornly keep disobeying him to the point that he must respond by punishing the disobedient ones. This is also called "testing" God.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term "tempt" can be translated as, "try to cause to sin" or "entice" or "cause a desire to sin."
- Ways to translate "temptations" could include, "things that tempt" or "things that entice someone to sin" or "things that cause desire to do something wrong."
- In the context of tempting God, this could be translated as, "put God to the test" or "test God" or "try God's patience" or "cause God to have to punish" or "stubbornly keep disobeying God."

(See also: [disobey](#), [disobedient](#), [Satan](#), [devil](#), [evil one](#), [sin](#), [sinful](#), [sinner](#), [sinning](#), [test](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- [25-01] Then Satan came to Jesus and **tempted** him to sin.
- [25-08] Jesus did not give in to Satan's **temptations**, so Satan left him.
- [38-11] Jesus told his disciples to pray that they would not enter into **temptation**.

testimony, testify

Definition:

The terms “testimony” and “testify” refer to making a statement about something that one knows to be true.

- Often a person “testifies” about something he has experienced directly.
- A witness who gives “false testimony” does not tell the truth about what happened.
- Sometimes the term “testimony” refers to a prophecy that a prophet has stated.
- In the New Testament, this term is often used to refer to how Jesus’ followers testified about the events of Jesus’ life, death, and resurrection.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “testify” or “give testimony” could also be translated as, “tell the facts” or “tell what was seen or heard” or “tell from personal experience” or “give evidence” or “tell what happened.”
- Ways to translate “testimony” could include, “report of what happened” or “statement of what is true” or “evidence” or “what has been said” or “prophecy.”
- The phrase, “as a testimony to them” could be translated as, “to show them what is true” or “to prove to them what is true.”
- The phrase, “as a testimony against them” could be translated as, “which will show them their sin” or “exposing their hypocrisy” or “which will prove that they are wrong.”
- To “give false testimony” could be translated as “say false things about” or “state things that are not true.”

(See: [ark of the covenant](#), [ark of the covenant decrees](#), [ark of the testimony](#), [ark of Yahweh](#), [prophet](#), [prophecy](#), [prophesy](#), [seer](#), [prophetess](#), [witness](#), [eyewitness](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Timothy

Facts:

Timothy was a young man from Lystra who became a believer in Christ as a result of Paul's ministry in his town. He later joined Paul on several missionary trips and helped shepherd new communities of believers.

- Timothy's father was a Greek, but both his grandmother Lois and his mother Eunice were Jews and believers in Christ.
- The elders and Paul formally appointed Timothy for the ministry by placing their hands on him and praying for him.
- Two books in the New Testament (I Timothy and 2 Timothy) are letters written by Paul, providing guidance to Timothy as a young leader of local churches.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [appoint](#), [appointed](#), [believer](#), [church](#), [Church](#), [Greek](#), [Grecian](#), [minister](#), [ministry](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

transgress, transgression

Definition:

The terms “transgress” and “transgression” refer to breaking a command, rule, or moral code.

- Figuratively, “transgression” can also be described as “crossing a line,” that is, going beyond a limit or boundary that has been set for the good of the person and others.
- The terms “transgression”, “sin”, “iniquity”, and “trespass” all include the meaning of acting against God’s will and disobeying his commands.

Translation Suggestions:

- “To transgress” could be translated as “to sin” or “to disobey” or “to rebel.”
- If a verse or passage uses two terms that mean “sin” or “transgress” or “trespass,” it is important, if possible, to use different ways to translate these terms. When the Bible uses two or more terms with similar meanings in the same context, usually its purpose is to emphasize what is being said or to show its importance. (See: [parallelism](#))

(See: [sin](#), [sinful](#), [sinner](#), [sinning](#), [trespass](#), [iniquity](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

true, truth, come true

Definition:

The terms “true” and “truth” refer to concepts that are facts, events that actually happened, and statements that were actually said.

- True things are real, genuine, actual, rightful, legitimate, and factual.
- The truth is an understanding, belief, fact, or statement that is true.
- The expression “come true” or “came true” is an expression that means that a prophecy actually happened as it was predicted that it would.
- Truth includes the concept of acting in a way that is reliable and faithful.
- Jesus revealed God’s truth in the words that he spoke.
- God’s word is truth. It tells about things that actually happened and teaches what is true about God and about everything he has made.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context and what is being described, the term “true” could also be translated by “real” or “factual” or “correct” or “right” or “certain” or “genuine.”
- Ways to translate the term “truth” could include, “what is true” or “fact” or “certainty” or “principle.”
- The expression “come true” could also be translated as, “actually happen” or “be fulfilled” or “happen as predicted.”
- The expression “tell the truth” or “speak the truth” could also be translated as, “say what is true” or “tell what really happened” or “say things that are reliable.”
- To “accept the truth” could be translated as, “believe what is true about God.”
- In an expression such as, “worship God in spirit and in truth,” the expression “in truth” could also be translated by, “faithfully obeying what God has taught us.”

(See also: [believe](#), [believe in](#), [belief](#), [faithful](#), [faithfulness](#), [fulfill](#), [obey](#), [obedient](#), [obedience](#), [prophet](#), [prophecy](#), [prophesy](#), [seer](#), [prophetess](#), [understand](#), [understanding](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[02-04]** The snake responded to the woman, “That is not **true**! You will not die.”
- **[14-06]** Immediately Caleb and Joshua, the other two spies, said, “It is **true** that the people of Canaan are tall and strong, but we can certainly defeat them!”
- **[16-01]** The Israelites began to worship the Canaanite gods instead of Yahweh, the **true** God.

- [31-08] They worshiped Jesus, saying to him, "**Truly**, you are the Son of God."
- [39-10] "I have come to earth to tell the **truth** about God. Everyone who loves the **truth** listens to me." Pilate said, "What is **truth**?"

trust, trustworthy, trustworthiness

Definition:

The term “trust” refers to believing that something or someone is true or dependable. A “trustworthy” person can be relied on to do and say what is right and true.

- Trust is closely related to faith. If we trust someone, we have faith in that person to do what they promised to do.
- Having trust in someone also means depending on that person.
- To “trust in” Jesus means to believe that he is God and that he died on the cross to pay for our sins, and to rely on him to save us.
- A “trustworthy saying” refers to something that is said that can be counted on to be true.

Translation Suggestions:

- Ways to translate “trust” could include, “believe” or “have faith” or “have confidence” or “depend on.”
- The phrase “put your trust in” is very similar in meaning to “trust in.”
- The term “trustworthy” could be translated as, “dependable” or “reliable” or “can always be trusted.”

(See also: , [believe](#), [believe in](#), [belief](#), [confidence](#), [confident](#), [faith](#), [faithful](#), [faithfulness](#), [true](#), [truth](#), [come true](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- [12-12] When the Israelites saw that the Egyptians were dead, they **trusted** in God and believed that Moses was a prophet of God.
- [14-15] Joshua was a good leader because he **trusted** and obeyed God.
- [17-02] David was a humble and righteous man who **trusted** and obeyed God.
- [34-06] Then Jesus told a story about people who **trusted** in their own good deeds and despised other people.

turn, turn away, turn back

Definition:

To “turn” means to physically change direction or to cause something else to change direction.

- The term “turn” can also mean “turn around” to look behind or to face a different direction.
- To “turn back” or “turn away” means to “go back” or “go away” or “cause to go away.”
- To “turn away from” can mean to “stop” doing something or to reject someone.
- To “turn toward” someone means to look directly at that person.
- To “turn and leave” or “turn his back to leave” means to “go away.”
- To “turn back to” means to “start doing something again.”
- To “turn away from” means to “stop doing something.”

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, “turn” can be translated as “change direction” or “go” or “move.”
- In some contexts, “turn” could be translated as, “cause” (someone) to do something. To “turn (someone) away from” could be translated as “cause (someone) to go away” or “cause (someone) to stop.”
- The phrase “turn away from God” could be translated as “stop worshiping God.”
- The phrase “turn back to God” could be translated as, “start worshiping God again.”
- When enemies “turn back,” it means they “retreat.” To “turn back the enemy” means to “cause the enemy to retreat.”
- Used figuratively, when Israel “turned to” false gods, they “started to worship” them. When they “turned away” from idols, they “stopped worshiping” them.
- When God “turned away from” his rebellious people, he “stopped protecting” or “stopped helping” them.
- The phrase “turn the hearts of the fathers to their children” could be translated as, “cause fathers to care for their children again.”
- The expression, “turn my honor into shame” could be translated as, “cause my honor to become shame” or “dishonor me so that I am shamed” or “shame me (by doing what is evil) so that people no longer honor me.”
- “I will turn your cities into ruin” could be translated as, “I will cause your cities to be destroyed” or “I will cause enemies to destroy your cities.”
- The phrase “turn into” could be translated as “become.” When Moses’ rod “turned into” a snake, it “became” a snake.” It could also be translated as “changed into.”

(See also: [idol](#), [leprosy](#), [leper](#), [worship](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

unbeliever, unbelief

Definition:

The term “unbelief” refers to not believing something or someone.

- In the Bible, “unbelief” refers to not believing in or not trusting in Jesus as one’s Savior.
- A person who does not believe in Jesus is called an “unbeliever.”

Translation Suggestions:

- Other ways to translate “unbelief” could include, “lack of faith” or “not believing.”
- The term “unbeliever” could be translated as “person who does not believe in Jesus” or “someone who does not trust in Jesus as Savior.”

(See also: [believer](#), [believe](#), [believe in](#), [belief](#), [trust](#), [trustworthy](#), [trustworthiness](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

ungodly, godless, ungodliness, godlessness

Definition:

The terms “ungodly” and “godless” describe people who are in rebellion against God. Living in an evil way, without thought of God is called “ungodliness” or “godlessness.”

- The meanings of these words are very similar. However, “godless” and “godlessness” may describe a more extreme condition in which people or nations do not even acknowledge God or his right to rule them.
- God pronounces judgment and wrath on ungodly people, on everyone who rejects him and his ways.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, the term “ungodly” could be translated as, “displeasing to God” or “immoral” or “disobeying God.”
- The terms “godless” and “godlessness” literally mean that the people are “without God” or “having no thought of God” or “acting in a way that does not acknowledge God.”
- Other ways to translate “ungodliness” or “godlessness” could be, “wickedness” or “evil” or “rebellion against God”.

(See also: [godly](#), [godliness](#), [evil](#), [wicked](#), [wickedness](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

wine, wineskin, new wine**Definition:**

In the Bible, the term “wine” refers to a kind of fermented drink made from the juice of a fruit called grapes. Wine was stored in “wineskins,” which were containers made out of animal skin.

- The term “new wine” referred to grape juice that had just been taken from the grape and was not fermented yet. Sometimes the term “wine” also refer to unfermented grape juice.
- To make wine, grapes are crushed in a winepress so that the juice comes out. The juice eventually ferments and alcohol forms in it.
- In Bible times, wine was the normal drink with meals. It did not have as much alcohol as present-day wine has.
- Before wine was served for a meal, it was often mixed with water.
- A wineskin that was old and brittle would get cracks in it, which allowed the wine to leak out. New wineskins were soft and flexible, which meant they did not tear easily and could store the wine safely.
- If wine is unknown in your culture, it could be translated as, “fermented grape juice” or “fermented drink made from a fruit called grapes” or “fermented fruit juice.” (See: [How to Translate Unknowns](#))
- Ways to translate “wineskin” could include, “bag for wine” or “animal skin wine bag” or “animal skin container for wine.”

(See also: [grape](#), [vine](#), [vineyard](#), [winepress](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

smashed

witness, eyewitness

Definition:

The term “witness” refers to a person who has personally experienced something that happened. Usually a witness is also someone who testifies about they know is true. The term “eyewitness” emphasizes that the person was actually there and saw what happened.

- “To witness” something means to see it happen.
- At a trial, a witness “gives witness” or “bears witness.” This has the same meaning as “testify.”
- Witnesses are expected to tell the truth about what they have seen or heard.
- A witness who does not tell the truth about what happened is called a “false witness.” He is said to “give false witness” or to “bear false witness.”
- The expression, “be a witness between” means that something or someone will be evidence that a contract has been made. The witness will make sure each person does what he has promised to do.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “witness” or “eyewitness” could be translated with a word or phrase that means, “person-seeing-it” or “the one who saw it happen” or “those who saw and heard (those things).”
- Something that is “a witness” could be translated as, “guarantee” or “sign of our promise” or “something that testifies that this is true.”
- The phrase “you will be my witnesses” could also be translated as, “you will tell other people about me” or “you will teach people the truth that I taught you” or “you will tell people what you have seen me do and heard me teach.”
- “To witness to” could be translated as, “to tell what was seen” or “to testify” or “to state what happened.”
- “To witness” something could be translated as “to see something” or “to experience something happen.”

(See also: [guilt](#), [guilty](#), [judge](#), [judgment](#), [true](#), [truth](#), [testimony](#), [testify](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[39-02]** Inside the house, the Jewish leaders put Jesus on trial. They brought many **false witnesses** who lied about him.

- [39-04] The high priest tore his clothes in anger and shouted, "We do not need any more **witnesses**. You have heard him say that he is the Son of God. What is your judgment?"
- [42-08]"It was also written in the scriptures that my disciples will proclaim that everyone should repent in order to receive forgiveness for their sins. They will do this starting in Jerusalem, and then go to all people groups everywhere. You are **witnesses** of these things."
- [43-07]"We are **witnesses** to the fact that God raised Jesus to life again."

word**Definition:**

A “word” refers to something that someone has said.

- An example of this would be when the angel told Zechariah, “You did not believe my words,” which means, “You did not believe what I said.”
- This term almost always refers to an entire message, not just one word.
- Often in the Bible “the word” refers to everything God has said or commanded, as in “the word of God” or “the word of truth.”
- Sometimes “word” refers to speech in general, such as “powerful in word and deed” which means “powerful in speech and behavior.”
- A very special use of this term is when Jesus is called “the Word.”

Translation Suggestions:

- Different ways of translating “word” or “words” include, “teaching” or “message” or “news” or “a saying” or “what was said.”
- When it refers to Jesus as “the Word,” this term could be translated as “the Message” or “the Saying.”

(See also: [word of God](#), [God’s word](#), [scripture](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

word of God, word of Yahweh, word of the Lord, scripture

Definition:

In the Bible, the term “word of God” refers to anything that God has communicated to people. This includes spoken and written messages. Jesus is also called “the Word of God.”

- The term “scriptures” means “writings.” It is only used in the New Testament and refers to the Hebrew scriptures or “Old Testament.” These writings were God’s message that he had told people to write down so that many years in the future people can still read it.
- The related terms “word of Yahweh” and “word of the Lord” often refer to a specific message from God that was given to a prophet or other person in the Bible.
- Sometimes this term occurs as simply “the word” or “my word” or “your word” (when talking about God’s word).
- In the New Testament, Jesus is called “the Word” and “the Word of God.” These titles mean that Jesus fully reveals who God is, because he is God himself.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, other ways to translate this term could include, “the message of Yahweh” or “God’s message” or “the teachings from God.”
- It may be more natural in some languages to make this term plural and say “God’s words” or “the words of Yahweh.”
- The expression “the word of Yahweh came” is often used to introduce something that God told his prophets or his people. This could be translated as, “Yahweh spoke this message” or “Yahweh spoke these words.”
- The term “scripture” or “scriptures” could be translated as “the writings” or “the written message from God.” This term should be translated differently from the translation of the term “word.”
- When “word” occurs alone, it could be translated as “message” or “God’s word” or “teachings,” depending on the context. Also consider the alternate translations suggested above.

(See also: [prophet](#), [prophecy](#), [prophesy](#), [word](#), [Yahweh](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[25-07]** In **God’s word** he commands his people, ‘Worship only the Lord your God and only serve him.’”
- **[33-06]** So Jesus explained, “The seed is the **word of God**.”

- [42-03] Then Jesus explained to them what **God's word** says about the Messiah.
- [42-07] Jesus said, "I told you that everything written about me in **God's word** must be fulfilled." Then he opened their minds so they could understand **God's word**.
- [45-10] Philip also used other **scriptures** to tell him the good news of Jesus.
- [48-12] But Jesus is the greatest prophet of all. He is the **Word of God**.
- [49-18] God tells you to pray, to study his **word**, to worship him with other Christians, and to tell others what he has done for you.

works, deeds, work, acts

Definition:

In the Bible, the terms “works,” “deeds,” and “acts” are used to refer generally to things that God or people do.

- The term “work” refers to doing labor or anything that is done to serve other people.
- God’s “works” and the “work of his hands” are expressions that refer to all the things he does or has done, including creating the world, saving sinners, providing for the needs of all creation and keeping the entire universe in place. The terms “deeds” and “acts” are also used to refer to God’s miracles in expressions such as, “mighty acts” or “marvelous deeds.”
- The works or deeds that a person does can be either good or evil.
- The Holy Spirit empowers believers to do good works, which are also called “good fruit.”
- People are not saved by their good works; they are saved through faith in Jesus.
- A person’s “work” can be what he does to earn a living or to serve God. The Bible also refers to God as “working.”

Translation Suggestions:

- Other ways to translate “works” or “deeds” could be, “actions” or “things that are done.”
- When referring to God’s “works” or “deeds” and the “work of his hands,” these expressions could also be translated as, “miracles” or “mighty acts” or “amazing things he does.”
- The expression, “the work of God” could be translated as, “the things that God is doing” or “the miracles God does” or “the amazing things that God does” or “everything God has accomplished.”
- The term “work” can just be the singular of “works” as in, “every good work” or “every good deed.”
- The term “work” can also have the broader meaning of “service” or “ministry.” For example, the expression, “your work in the Lord” could also be translated as, “what you do for the Lord.”
- The expression, “examine your own work” could also be translated as, “make sure what you are doing is God’s will” or “make sure that what you are doing pleases God.”
- The expression “the work of the Holy Spirit” could be translated as, “the empowering of the Holy Spirit” or “the ministry of the Holy Spirit” or “the things that the Holy Spirit does.”

(See: [fruit](#), [fruitful](#), [Holy Spirit](#), [Spirit of God](#), [Spirit of the Lord](#), [miracle](#), [wonder](#), [sign](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

world, worldly

Definition:

The term “world” usually refers to the part of the universe where people live: the earth. The term “worldly” describes the evil values and behaviors of people living in this world.

- In its most general sense, the term “world” refers to the heavens and the earth, as well as everything in them.
- In many contexts, “world” actually means, “people in the world.”
- Sometimes it is implied that this refers to the evil people on earth or the people who do not obey God.
- The apostles also used “world” to refer to the selfish behaviors and corrupt values of the people living in this world. This can include self-righteous religious practices which are based on human efforts.
- People and things characterized by these values are said to be “worldly.”

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, “world” could also be translated as, “universe” or “people of this world” or “corrupt things in the world” or “evil attitudes of people in the world.”
- The phrase “all the world” often means “many people” and refers to the people living in a certain region. For example, “all the world came to Egypt” could be translated as, “many people from the surrounding countries came to Egypt” or “people from all the countries surrounding Egypt came there.”
- Another way to translate “all the world went to their hometown to be registered in the Roman census” would be, “many of the people living in regions ruled by the Roman empire went...”
- Depending on the context, the term “worldly” could be translated as, “evil” or “sinful” or “selfish” or “ungodly” or “corrupt” or “influenced by the corrupt values of people in this world.”
- The phrase “saying these things in the world” can be translated as “saying these things to the people of the world.”
- In other contexts, “in the world” could also be translated as, “living among the people of the world” or “living among ungodly people.”

(See also: [corrupt](#), [corruption](#), [heaven](#), [sky](#), [heavens](#), [heavenly](#), [Rome](#), [Roman](#), [ungodly](#), [godless](#), [ungodliness](#), [godlessness](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

worthy, worth, unworthy, worthless

Definition:

The term “worthy” describes someone or something that deserves respect or honor. To “have worth” means to be valuable or important. The term “worthless” means to not have any value.

- Being worthy is related to being valuable or having importance
- To be “unworthy” means to not be deserving of any special notice.
- To not feel worthy means to feel less important than someone else or to not feel deserving of being treated with honor or kindness.
- The term “unworthy” and the term “worthless” have related, but different meanings. To be “unworthy” means to not be deserving of any honor or recognition. To be “worthless” means to not have any purpose or value.

Translation Suggestions:

- “Worthy” could be translated as “deserving” or “important” or “valuable.”
- The word “worth” could be translated as, “value” or “importance.”
- The phrase “to have worth” could also be translated as “to be valuable” or “to be important.”
- The phrase, “is worth more than” could be translated as, “is more valuable than.”
- Depending on the context, the term, “unworthy” could also be translated as “unimportant” or “dishonorable” or “undeserving.”
- The term “worthless” could be translated as, “with no value” or “with no purpose” or “worth nothing.”

(See: [honor](#), [to honor](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

yoke

Definition:

A yoke is a piece of wood or metal attached to two or more animals to connect them for the purpose of pulling a plow or a cart. There are also several figurative meanings for this term.

- The term “yoke” is used figuratively to refer to something that joins people for the purpose of working together, such as in serving Jesus.
- Paul used the term “yokefellow” to refer to someone who was serving Christ as he was. This could also be translated as “fellow worker” or “fellow servant” or “coworker.”
- The term “yoke” is also often used figuratively to refer to a heavy load that someone has to carry, such as when being oppressed by slavery or persecution.
- In most contexts, it is best to translate this term literally, using the local term for a yoke that is used for farming.
- Other ways to translate the figurative use of this term could be, “oppressive burden” or “heavy load” or “bond,” depending on the context.

(See also: [bind](#), [bond](#), [bound](#), [burden](#), [oppress](#), [oppression](#), [oppressor](#), [persecute](#), [persecution](#), [servant](#), [slave](#), [slavery](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

translationAcademy

Abstract Nouns

This answers the question: What are abstract nouns and how do I deal with them in my translation?

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

- *Parts of Speech*
- *Sentences*

Abstract nouns are nouns that refer to attitudes, qualities, events, situations, or even to relationships among these ideas. These are things that cannot be seen or touched in a physical sense, such as happiness, weight, injury, unity, friendship, health, and reason. This is a translation issue because some languages may express a certain idea with an abstract noun, while others would need a different way to express it. For example, "What is its *weight*?" could be expressed as "How much does it *weigh*?" or "How *heavy* is it?"

Description

Remember that nouns are words that refer to a person, place, thing, or idea. **ABSTRACT NOUNS** are nouns that refer to attitudes, qualities, events, situations, or even to relationships among these ideas. These are things that cannot be seen or touched in a physical sense, such as joy, peace, creation, goodness, contentment, justice, truth, freedom, vengeance, slowness, length, and weight.

Abstract nouns allow us to express thoughts about ideas in fewer words than if we did not have those nouns. For example, we can say, "I believe in the forgiveness of sin." But if English did not have the two abstract nouns "forgiveness" and "sin," then we would have to make a longer sentence to express the same meaning. We would have to say, for example, "I believe that God is willing to forgive people after they have sinned."

Abstract nouns also allow us to refer to a situation without telling more details about it than we want to tell. For example, we can say "I got here late because there was an accident on the highway." "Accident" is an abstract noun. If it does not matter whose accident it was, or what kind of accident it was, then it can be better if I do not have to say these things about it.

Reason this is a translation issue: The Bible that you translate from may use abstract nouns to express certain ideas. Your language might not use abstract nouns for some of those ideas; instead, it might use phrases to express those ideas. Those phrases will have other kinds of words such as adjectives, verbs, or adverbs, that express some of the meaning in the abstract noun.

Examples from the Bible

from *childhood* you have known the sacred writings (2 Timothy 3:15 ULB)

The abstract noun "childhood" refers to when someone is a child.

But *godliness with contentment* is great *gain*. (1 Timothy 6:6 ULB)

The abstract nouns “godliness” and “contentment” refer to being godly and content. The abstract noun “gain” refers to something that benefits or helps someone.

Today *salvation* has come to this house, because he too is a son of Abraham. (Luke 19:9 ULB)

The abstract noun “salvation” here refers to being saved.

The Lord does not move slowly concerning his promises, as some consider *slowness* to be (2 Peter 3:9 ULB)

The abstract noun “slowness” refers how slowly something is done.

He will bring to light the hidden things of darkness and reveal the *purposes* of the heart. (1 Corinthians 4:5 ULB)

The abstract noun “purposes” refers to the things that people want to do and the reasons they want to do them.

Translation Strategies

If an abstract noun would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using it. If not, here is another option:

1. Reword the sentence with a phrase that expresses the meaning of the abstract noun.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1. Reword the sentence with a phrase that expresses the meaning of the abstract noun.

- **from *childhood* you have known the sacred writings** (2 Timothy 3:15 ULB)
 - ”Ever since *you were a child* you have known the sacred writings.”
- **But *godliness with contentment* is great *gain*.** (1 Timothy 6:6 ULB)
 - ”But *being godly* and *content* is very *beneficial*.”
 - ”But we *benefit* greatly when we *are godly* and *content*.”
 - ”But we *benefit* greatly when we *honor and obey God* and when we are *happy with what we have*.
- **Today *salvation* has come to this house, because he too is a son of Abraham.** (Luke 19:9 ULB)
 - ”Today the people in this house *have been saved*...”
 - ”Today God *has saved* the people in this house...”

- **The Lord does not move slowly concerning his promises, as some consider *slowness* to be** (2 Peter 3:9 ULB)
 - "The Lord does not move slowly concerning his promises, as some consider *moving slowly* to be"

- **He will bring to light the hidden things of darkness and reveal the *purposes* of the heart.** (1 Corinthians 4:5 ULB)
 - "He will bring to light the hidden things of darkness and reveal *the things that people want to do and the reasons they want to do them.*"

Active or Passive

This answers the question: What do active and passive mean, and how do I translate passive sentences?

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

- *Sentence Structure*
- *Verbs*

Some languages have both active and passive sentences. In active sentences, the subject does the action. In passive sentences the subject is the one that the action is done to. Here are some examples with their subjects underlined:

- ACTIVE: *My father* built the house in 2010.
- PASSIVE: *The house* was built in 2010.

Translators whose languages do not have passive sentences will need to know how they can translate passive sentences that they find in the Bible. Other translators will need to decide when to use a passive sentence and when not to.

Description

Some languages have both active and passive forms of sentences.

- In the **ACTIVE** form, the subject does the action and is always mentioned.
- In the **PASSIVE** form, the action is done to the subject and the one who does the action is *not always* mentioned.

In the examples of active and passive sentences below, we have underlined the subject.

ACTIVE: *My father* built the house in 2010.

PASSIVE: *The house* was built by my father in 2010.

PASSIVE: *The house* was built in 2010. (This does not tell who did the action.)

All languages have active forms. Some languages have passive forms, and some do not. The passive form is not used for the same reasons in all of the languages that have it.

Purposes for the passive:

- The speaker is talking about the person or thing the action was done to, not about the person who did the action.
- The speaker does not want to tell who did the action.
- The speaker does not know who did the action.

Translation Principles Regarding the Passive

- Translators whose language does not use passive forms will need to find another way to express the idea.
- Translators whose language has passive forms will need to understand why the passive is used in a particular sentence in the Bible and decide whether or not to use a passive form for that purpose in his translation of the sentence.

Examples from the Bible

And their shooters shot at your soldiers from off the wall, and some of the king's servants *were killed*, and your servant Uriah the Hittite *was killed* too. (2 Samuel 11:24 ULB)

This means that the enemies shooters shot and killed some of the king's servants, including Uriah. The point is what happened to the king's servants and Uriah, not who shot them.

In the morning when the men of the town got up, the altar of Baal *was broken down* ... (Judges 6:28 ULB)

The men of the town saw what had happened to the altar of Baal, but they did not know who broke it down.

No stonework *was seen* there. (1 Kings 6:18 ULB)

This means that no one saw stonework there. The point is that no stonework was done there.

Translation Strategies

If you decide that it is better to translate without a passive form, here are some strategies you might consider.

1. Use the same verb in an active sentence and tell who or what did the action.
2. Use the same verb in an active sentence, and do not tell who or what did the action.
3. Use a different verb.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1. Use the same verb in an active sentence and tell who did the action.

- **A loaf of bread *was given* him every day from the street of the bakers.** (Jeremiah 37:21 ULB)
 - *The king's servants gave* Jeremiah a loaf of bread every day from the street of the bakers.

2. Use the same verb in an active sentence, and do not tell who did the action. Instead use a generic expression like "they," or "people," or "someone."

- **It would be better for him if a millstone *were put* around his neck and he *were thrown* into the sea** (Luke 17:2 ULB)
 - It would be better for him if *they were to put* a millstone around his neck and *throw* him into the sea.
 - It would be better for him if *someone were to put* a heavy stone around his neck and *throw* him into the sea.

3. Use a different verb in an active sentence.

- **A loaf of bread *was given* him every day from the street of the bakers.** (Jeremiah 37:21 ULB)
 - He *received* a loaf of bread every day from the street of the bakers.

Next we recommend you learn about:

- *Abstract Nouns*
- *Word Order*

Distinguishing versus Informing or Reminding

This answers the question: When a phrase is used with a noun, what is the difference between phrases that distinguish the noun from others and phrases that simply inform or remind?

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

- *Parts of Speech*
- *Sentences*

In some languages, phrases can be used with a noun for two different things. They can either distinguish one item from another or they can give more information or a reminder about an item. Other languages use phrases with a noun only for distinguishing. When people who speak these languages hear a phrase with a noun, they assume that its function is to distinguish one item from another.

Description

In some languages, phrases can be used with a noun for two different things. They can either distinguish one item from other possible items, or they can give more information about an item. That information could be new to the reader, or a reminder about something the reader might already know or assume.

- "Mary gave some of the food to *her sister who was very thankful*.
 - If her sister was usually thankful, the phrase "who was thankful" could distinguish this sister of Mary's from another sister who was not usually thankful.
- "Mary gave some of the food to her sister, *who was very thankful*."
 - This same phrase can be used to inform us about how Mary's sister responded when Mary gave her the food. In this case it does not distinguish one sister from another.

Reasons this is a translation issue

- Some languages use phrases with a noun only for distinguishing one item from another. When translating a phrase that is used for giving more information, people who speak these languages will need to separate the phrase from the noun. Otherwise people who read it or hear it will think that the phrase is meant to distinguish one item from other possible items.

Examples from the Bible

1. Examples of words and phrases that are used to distinguish one item from other possible items: These usually do not cause a problem in translation.

... The curtain is to separate *the holy place* from *the most holy place*. (Exodus 26:33 ULB)

The words “holy” and “most holy” distinguish two different places from each other and from any other place.

A foolish son is a grief to his father, and bitterness to *the woman who bore him*.
(Proverbs 17:25 ULB)

The phrase “who bore him” distinguishes which woman the son is bitterness to. He is not bitterness to all women, but to his mother.

2. Examples of words and phrases that are used to give added information or a reminder about an item: These are a translation issue for languages that do not use these. (See: [Phrases that Inform or Remind](#))

for *your righteous judgments* are good. (Psalm 119:39 ULB)

The word “righteous” simply reminds us that God’s judgments are righteous. It does not distinguish his righteous judgement from his unrighteous judgement, because all of his judgments are righteous.

Can *Sarah, who is ninety years old*, bear a son? - (Genesis 17:17-18 ULB)

The phrase “who is ninety years old” is the reason that Abraham did not think that Sarah could bear a son. He was not distinguishing one woman named Sarah from another woman named Sarah, and he was not telling anyone something new about her age. He simply did not think that a woman who was that old could bear a child.

Translation Strategies

If your language uses words or phrases with a noun only to distinguish one item from another, see [Phrases that Inform or Remind](#) for translation strategies.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

See [Phrases that Inform or Remind](#) for how to translate phrases that inform or remind.

Doublet

This answers the question: What are doublets and how can I translate them?

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

- *Figures of Speech*

A doublet is a pair of words used together that mean nearly the same nearly thing. In some languages people do not use doublets, or they may use them only in certain situations. Translators may need to find some other way to express the meaning.

King David was *old* and *advanced in years*. (1 Kings 1:1 ULB)

The underlined words mean the same thing. Together they mean “very old.”

Description

We are using the word doublet to refer to two words or very short phrases that mean the same thing and that are used in the same phrase. Often they are joined with the word “and.” Often they are used to emphasize or intensify the idea expressed by the two words.

Reason this is a translation issue

In some languages people do not use doublets. Or they may use doublets, but they may do it for a reason that would not fit in a particular verse.

Examples from the Bible

King David was *old* and *advanced in years*. (1 Kings 1:1 ULB)

This means that he was “very old.”

he attacked two men *more righteous* and *better* than himself (1 Kings 2:32 ULB)

This means that they were “much more righteous” than he was.

You have decided to prepare *false* and *deceptive* words (Daniel 2:9 ULB)

This means that they had prepared “many false things to say.”

as of a lamb *without blemish* and *without spot*. (1 Peter 1:19 ULB)

This means that he was like a lamb that did not have any blemish—not even one.

Translation Strategies

If a doublet would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using one. If not, consider these strategies.

1. Translate only one of the words.
2. If the doublet is used to intensify the meaning, translate one of the words and add a word that intensifies it such as “very” or “great” or “many.”
3. If the doublet is used to intensify or emphasize the meaning, use your culture’s way of doing that.

Translation Strategies Applied

1. Translate only one of the words.

- **You have decided to prepare *false* and *deceptive* words** (Daniel 2:9 ULB)

- ”You have decided to prepare *false* things to say.”

2. If the doublet is used to intensify the meaning, translate one of the words and add a word that intensifies it such as “very” or “great” or “many.”

- **King David was *old* and *advanced in years***. (1 Kings 1:1 ULB)

- ”King David was *very old*.”

3. If the doublet is used to intensify or emphasize the meaning, use one of your language’s ways of doing that.

- **a lamb *without blemish* and *without spot***. (1 Peter 1:19 ULB) - English can emphasize this with “any” and “at all.”

- ”a lamb *without any blemish at all*”

Ellipsis

This answers the question: What is ellipsis?

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

- *Figures of Speech*
- *Sentences*

Ellipsis is where a speaker or writer leaves one or more words out of a sentence because he knows that the hearer or reader will understand the meaning of the sentence and fill in the words in his mind when he hears or reads the words that are there.

Description

Ellipsis is where one or more words are left out of the sentence because the sentence can be understood without them. The information that is omitted has usually already been stated in a preceding sentence or phrase.

the wicked will not stand in the judgment, nor sinners in the assembly of the righteous
(Psalm 1:5)

This is ellipsis because “sinners in the assembly of the righteous” is not a complete sentence. The speaker assumes that the hearer will understand what it is that sinners will not do in the assembly of the righteous.

Reason this is a translation issue: Readers who see incomplete sentences or phrases may not know what the missing information is.

Examples from the Bible

when the blind man was near, Jesus asked him, “What do you want me to do for you?”
He said, “Lord, *that I might receive my sight.*” (Luke 18:40-41 ULB)

The man answered in an incomplete sentence because he wanted to be polite by giving Jesus only as much information as necessary. He did not say that he wanted Jesus to heal him, because he knew that Jesus would understand that if he wanted to receive his sight, Jesus would have to heal him.

He makes Lebanon skip like a calf *and Sirion like a young ox.* (Psalm 29:6 ULB)

The writer wants his words to be few and to make good poetry. He did not say that Yahweh makes Sirion skip like a young ox because he knew that his readers could fill in the information themselves.

Translation Strategies

If ellipsis would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using it. If not, here is another option:

1. Add the missing words to the incomplete phrase or sentence.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1. Add the missing words to the incomplete phrase or sentence.

- **the wicked will not stand in the judgment, nor *sinner*s in the assembly of the righteous** (Psalm 1:5)
 - "the wicked will not stand in the judgment, and *sinner*s will not stand in the assembly of the righteous"
- **when the blind man was near, Jesus asked him, "What do you want me to do for you?" He said, "Lord, *that I might receive my sight.*"** (Luke 18:40-41)
 - "when the blind man was near, Jesus asked him, 'What do you want me to do for you?' He said, 'Lord, I want you to heal me that I might receive my sight.'"
- **He makes Lebanon skip like a calf and Sirion like a young ox.** (Psalm 29:6)
 - "He makes Lebanon skip like a calf, and he makes Sirion skip like a young ox."

Euphemism

This answers the question: What is a Euphemism?

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

- *Figures of Speech*

A euphemism is a mild or polite way of referring to something that is unpleasant, embarrassing, or socially unacceptable, such as death or activities usually done in private. Its purpose is to avoid offending the people who hear or read it.

Description

A euphemism is a mild or polite way of referring to something that is unpleasant, embarrassing, or socially unacceptable. Its purpose is to avoid offending the people who hear or read it.

they found Saul and his sons fallen on Mount Gilboa. (1 Chronicles 10:8 ULB)

This means that Saul and his sons were dead. It is euphemism because the important thing was not that Saul and his sons had fallen but that they were dead. Sometimes people do not like to speak directly about death because it is unpleasant.

Reason this is a translation issue: Readers may think that the writer means only what the words literally say.

Examples from the Bible

where there was a cave. Saul went inside to relieve himself (1 Samuel 24:3 ULB)

The original hearers would have understood that Saul went into the cave to use it as a toilet, but the writer wanted to avoid offending or distracting them, so he does not say specifically what Saul did or what he left in the cave.

whether we are awake or asleep (1 Thessalonians 5:10 ULB)

Paul refers to being dead as being “asleep” so that instead of thinking that they will never see their loved ones again in this life, his readers will remember that they will see them again when Jesus establishes his kingdom.

Translation Strategies

If euphemism would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using it. If not, here are other options:

1. Use a euphemism from your own culture.
2. State the information plainly without a euphemism if it would not be offensive.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1. Use a euphemism from your own culture.

- **where there was a cave. Saul went inside to relieve himself** (1 Samuel 24:3 ULB) - Some languages might use euphemisms like these:
 - “where there was a cave. Saul went into the cave to use it as a toilet”
 - “where there was a cave. Saul went into the cave to dig a hole”
 - “where there was a cave. Saul went into the cave to have some time alone”

2. State the information plainly without a euphemism if it would not be offensive.

- **whether we are awake or asleep** (1 Thessalonians 5:10 ULB)
 - “whether we are alive or dead”

Exclusive “We”

This answers the question: What is exclusive “we”?

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

- *Pronouns*

Some languages have more than one form of “we”: an inclusive form that means “I and you” and an exclusive form that means “I and someone else but not you.” Translators whose language has separate exclusive and inclusive forms for “we” will need to understand what the speaker meant so they can decide which form of “we” to use.

Description

Some languages have more than one form of “we”: an **inclusive** form that means “I and you” and an **exclusive** form that means “I and someone else but *not* you.” The exclusive form excludes the person being spoken to. This is also true for “us,” “our,” “ours,” and “ourselves.” Some languages have inclusive forms and exclusive forms for each of these.

See the pictures. The people on the right are the people that the speaker is talking to. The yellow



highlight shows who the inclusive “we” and the exclusive “we” refer to.



Reason this is a translation issue - The Bible was first written in the Hebrew, Aramaic, and Greek languages. Like English, these languages do not have separate exclusive and inclusive forms for “we”. Translators whose language has separate exclusive and inclusive forms of “we” will need to understand what the speaker meant so they can decide which form of “we” to use.

Examples from the Bible

Forgive *us our* sins (Luke 11:4 ULB)

God has no sins to forgive; so languages that have exclusive forms of “we” and “us” would use the exclusive forms in this verse.

we have seen, and bear witness, and declare to you the eternal life, which was with the Father, and was manifested to us (1 John 1:2 ULB)

John is telling people who have not seen Jesus what he and the other apostles have seen. So languages that have exclusive forms of “we” and “us” would use the exclusive forms in this verse.

Next we recommend you learn about:

- *Inclusive “We”*

Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

This answers the question: What are assumed knowledge, implicit information, and explicit information?

Assumed knowledge is whatever a speaker assumes his audience knows before he speaks and gives them some kind of information. There are two types information.

- **Explicit information** is what the speaker states directly.
- **Implicit information** is what the speaker does not state directly because he expects his audience to be able to learn it from what he says.

Description

When someone speaks or writes, he has something specific that he wants people to know. He normally states this directly. This is **explicit information**.

The speaker assumes that his audience already knows certain things that they will think about in order to understand this information. Normally he does not tell people these things, although what he says may remind them. This is called **assumed knowledge**.

The speaker does not always directly state everything that he expects his audience to learn from what he says. Information that he expects people to learn from what he says even though he does not state it directly is **implicit information**.

Examples from the Bible

Then a scribe came to him and said, "Teacher, I will follow you wherever you go." Jesus said to him, "Foxes *have holes*, and the birds of the sky *have nests*, but the Son of Man has nowhere to lay his head." (Matthew 8:20 ULB)

Jesus did not say what foxes and birds use holes and nests for, because he assumed that the scribe would have known that foxes sleep in holes in the ground and birds sleep in their nests. This is **assumed knowledge**. Jesus did not directly say here "I am the Son of Man" but, if the scribe did not already know it, then that fact would be **implicit information** that he could learn because Jesus referred to himself that way. Jesus did not state explicitly that he travelled a lot and did not have a house that he slept in every night. That is **implicit information** that the scribe could learn when Jesus said that he had nowhere to lay his head.

Woe to you, Chorazin! Woe to you, Bethsaida! If the mighty deeds had been done in Tyre and Sidon which were done in you, they would have repented long ago in sackcloth and ashes. But it will be more tolerable for Tyre and Sidon at the day of judgment than for you. (Matthew 11:21, 22 ULB)

Jesus assumed that the people he was speaking to knew that Tyre and Sidon were very wicked, and that the day of judgment is a time when God will judge every person. Jesus also knew that the

people he was talking to believed that they were good and did not need to repent. Jesus did not need to tell them these things. This is all **assumed knowledge**.

An important piece of **implicit information** here is that because the people he was speaking to did not repent, they would be judged more severely than the people of Tyre and Sidon would be judged.

Why do your disciples violate the traditions of the elders? For *they do not wash their hands when they eat*. (Matthew 15:2 ULB)

One of the traditions of the elders was a ceremony in which people would wash their hands in order to be ritually clean before eating. People thought that in order to be righteous, they had to follow all the traditions of the elders. This was **assumed knowledge** that the Pharisees who were speaking to Jesus expected him to know. They were accusing his disciples of not following the traditions. This is **implicit information** that they wanted him to understand from what they said.

Next we recommend you learn about:

- *Making Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information Explicit*

When Masculine Words Include Women

This answers the question: How do I translate “brother” or “he” when it could refer to anyone, male or female?

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

- *Pronouns*
- *Generic Noun Phrases*

In some parts of the Bible, the words “men,” “brothers” and “sons” refer only to men. In other parts of the Bible, those words include both men and women. When the writer meant both men and women, translators need to translate it in a way that does not limit the meaning to men.

Description

In some languages a word that normally refers to men can be used to refer to both men and women. For example, the Bible sometimes says ‘brothers’ when it refers to both brothers and sisters.

Also in some languages, the masculine pronouns “he” and “him” can be used for any person if it is not important whether the person is a man or women. In the example below, the pronoun is “his,” but it is not limited to males.

A wise child makes *his* father rejoice
but a foolish child brings grief to *his* mother. (Proverbs 10:1 ULB)

Reason this is a translation issue

- In some cultures words like “man,” “brother,” and “son” can only be used to refer to men. If those words are used in a translation, people will think that what is being said does not apply to women.
- In some cultures, the masculine pronouns “he” and “him” can only refer to men. If a masculine pronoun is used, people will think that what is said does not apply to women.

Translation Principles

When a statement applies to both men and women, translate it in such a way that people will be able to understand that.

Examples from the Bible

The wise *man* dies just like the fool dies. (Ecclesiastes 2:16 ULB)

This verse does not contrast men and women. What it says is true of both men and women.

Then said Jesus to his disciples, “If anyone wants to follow me, *he* must deny *himself*, take up *his* cross, and follow me.” (Matthew 16:24-26 ULB)

Jesus was not talking about only men. What he said was true of both men and women.

Caution: Sometimes masculine words are used specifically to refer to men. Do not use words that would lead people to think that they include women. The underlined words below are specifically about men.

Moses said, 'If a *man* dies, having no children, *his brother* must marry *his* wife and have a child for *his brother*.' (Matthew 22:24 ULB)

Translation Strategies

If people would understand that that masculine words like “man,” “brother,” and “he” can include women, then consider using them. Otherwise, here are some ways for translating those words when they include women.

1. Use a noun that can be used for both men and women.
2. Use a word that refers to men and a word that refers to women.
3. Use pronouns that can be used for both men and women.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1. Use nouns that can be used for both men and women.

- **The wise *man* dies just like the fool dies.** (Ecclesiastes 2:16 ULB)
 - "The wise *person* dies just like the fool dies."
 - "Wise *people* die just like fools die."

2. Use a word that refers to men and a word that refers to women.

- **For we do not want you to be ignorant, *brothers*, about the troubles we had in Asia** (2 Corinthians 1:8) - Paul was writing this letter to both men and women.
 - "For we do not want you to be ignorant, *brothers and sisters*, about the troubles we had in Asia" (2 Corinthians 1:8)

3. Use pronouns that can be used for both men and women.

- **If anyone wants to follow me, he must deny himself, take up his cross, and follow me.** (Matthew 16:24 ULB) - English speakers can change the singular pronouns “he” “himself” and “his” to plural pronouns “they” “themselves” and “their” in order to show that it applies to all people, not just men.
 - "If people want to follow me, *they* must deny *themselves*, take up *their* cross, and follow me."

Generic Noun Phrases

This answers the question: What are generic noun phrases and how can I translate them?

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

- *Parts of Speech*

Generic noun phrases refer to people or things in general rather than to specific individuals or things.

The one who does what is right is kept away from trouble and it comes upon the wicked instead. (Proverbs 11:8 ULB)

The underlined phrases above do not refer to any specific people but to anyone who does what is right or anyone who is wicked.

Different languages have different ways of showing that a phrase refers to something in general. Translators should use ways of doing this that are natural in their language.

Description

Generic noun phrases refers to people or things in general rather than to specific individuals or things. This happens frequently in proverbs, because proverbs tell about things that are true about people in general.

Can a man walk on hot coals without scorching his feet?
So is the man who goes into his neighbor's wife;
the one who has relations with her will not go unpunished. (Proverbs 6:28 ULB)

The underlined phrases above do not refer to a specific man. They refer to any man who does these things.

Reason this is a translation issue

Different languages have different ways of showing that noun phrases refer to something in general. Translators should refer to these general ideas in ways that are natural in their language.

Examples from the Bible

People curse the man who refuses to sell them grain (Proverbs 11:26 ULB)

This does not refer to a particular man, but to any person who refuses to sell grain.

Yahweh gives favor to a good man, but he condemns a man who makes evil plans.
(Proverbs 12:2 ULB)

The phrase “a good man” does not refer to a particular man, but to any person who is good. The phrase “a man who makes evil plans” does not refer to a particular man, but to any person who makes evil plans.

Translation Strategies

If your language can use the same wording as in the ULB to refer to people or things in general rather than to specific individuals or things, consider using the same wording. Here are some strategies you might use.

1. Use the word “the” in the noun phrase.
2. Use the word “a” in the noun phrase.
3. Use the word “any,” as in “any person” or “anyone.”
4. Use the plural form, as in “people.”
5. Use any other way that is natural in your language.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1. Use the word “the” in the noun phrase.
 - **Yahweh gives favor to *a good man*, but he condemns *a man who makes evil plans*.** (Proverbs 12:2 ULB)
 - “Yahweh gives favor to *the good man*, but he condemns *the man who makes evil plans*.” (Proverbs 12:2)

The following examples show how the strategies may be applied to a noun phrase that has “the” in it. Use the strategy that is most natural in your language:

- **People curse *the man who refuses to sell them grain*.** (Proverbs 11:26 ULB)
2. Use the word “a” in the noun phrase.
 - “People curse *a man* who refuses to sell them grain”
 3. Use the word “any,” as in “any person” or “anyone.”
 - “People curse *any man* who refuses to sell them grain”
 4. Use the plural form, as in “people” (or in this sentence, “men”).
 - “People curse *men* who refuse to sell them grain”
 5. Use any other way that is natural in your language.
 - “People curse *whoever* refuses to sell them grain.”

Next we recommend you learn about:

- *When Masculine Words Include Women*

Hendiadys

This answers the question: What is hendiadys and how can I translate phrases that have it?

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

- *Figures of Speech*
- *Parts of Speech*

Hendiadys is when a speaker makes a single idea more forceful by connecting two nouns or adjectives with “and” when one of the words actually describes the other.

Description

Hendiadys is when a speaker expresses a single idea by connecting two words with “and” when one of the words actually describes the other.

his own *kingdom and glory* (1 Thessalonians 2:12 ULB)

Though “kingdom” and “glory” are both nouns, “glory” actually tells what kind of kingdom it is: it is a kingdom of glory or a glorious kingdom.

Reasons this is a translation issue

- Often hendiadys has an abstract noun. Some languages may not have a noun with the same meaning.
- Some languages do not use hendiadys, so people may not understand that one word describes the other.

Examples from the Bible

for I will give you *words and wisdom* (Luke 21:15 ULB)

“Words” and “wisdom” are nouns, but in this figure of speech “wisdom” describes “words.”

if you are willing and obedient (Isaiah 1:19 ULB)

“Willing” and “obedient” are adjectives, but “willing” describes “obedient.”

Translation Strategies

If the hendiadys would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using it. If not, here are other options:

1. Substitute one noun with an adjective that means the same thing.
2. Substitute one noun with a phrase that means the same thing.
3. Substitute one adjective with an adverb that means the same thing.

4. Substitute other parts of speech that mean the same thing and show that one word describes the other.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1. Substitute one noun with an adjective that means the same thing.

- **for I will give you *words and wisdom*** (Luke 21:15 ULB)
 - "For I will give you *wise words*"
- **that you should walk in a manner that is worthy of God, who calls you to *his own kingdom and glory***. (1 Thessalonians 2:12 ULB)
 - "that you should walk in a manner that is worthy of God, who calls you to *his own glorious kingdom*."

2. Substitute one noun with a phrase that means the same thing.

- **for I will give you *words and wisdom*** (Luke 21:15 ULB)
 - "For I will give you *words of wisdom*"
- **that you should walk in a manner that is worthy of God, who calls you to *his own kingdom and glory***. (1 Thessalonians 2:12 ULB)
 - "that you should walk in a manner that is worthy of God, who calls you to *his own kingdom of glory*."

3. Substitute one adjective with an adverb that means the same thing.

- **if you are willing and obedient** (Isaiah 1:19 ULB)
 - "if you are willingly obedient"

4. Substitute other parts of speech that mean the same thing and show that one word describes the other.

- **if you are willing and obedient** (Isaiah 1:19 ULB) - The adjective "obedient" can be substituted with the verb "obey."
 - "if you obey willingly"

Next we recommend you learn about:

- *Doublet*

Hyperbole

This answers the question: What is hyperbole?

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

- *Figures of Speech*

Hyperbole is a figure of speech in which the speaker shows that something is very important by describing it as larger or greater than it really is. He may greatly exaggerate something in order to show his strong feeling or opinion about it, or he may generalize the situation by using words like “every” or “all” to mean “many.”

Description

Hyperbole is a figure of speech in which the speaker shows that something is very important by describing it as larger or greater than it really is. There are two kinds of hyperbole:

1. Exaggeration: This is when a speaker deliberately describes something by an extreme or even unreal statement, usually to show his strong feeling or opinion about it.

Whoever does not *carry his own cross* and come after me cannot be my disciple. (Luke 14:27 ULB) - This is an exaggeration. It means that whoever wants to be Jesus’ disciple must be determined to follow him faithfully, even if his enemies were to kill that person.

2. Generalization: This is when a speaker uses words like “every” or “all” to mean something like “very many,” but not “every one.” (Some people may not call generalization like this “hyperbole.”)

Moses was educated in *all the learning of the Egyptians* (Acts 7:22 ULB) - This is a generalization. It means that he had learned much of what the Egyptians knew and taught.

Reason this is a translation issue

If readers do not understand that a statement is a hyperbole, they may either think that something happened that did not happen, or they may think that the speaker or writer was saying something that is not true.

Examples from the Bible

Examples of Exaggeration

If your hand causes you to stumble, *cut it off*. It is better for you to enter into life maimed... (Mark 9:43 ULB)

When Jesus said to cut off your hand, he meant that we should do whatever extreme things we need to do in order not to sin. He used this hyperbole to show how extremely important it is to try to stop sinning.

If anyone comes to me and does not *hate* his own father, mother, wife, children, brothers and sisters—yes, and his own life also—he cannot be my disciple. (Luke 14:26 ULB)

Because of many other things that Jesus said, we know that his use of the word “hate” here is hyperbole. He meant that we must not love even our own family members more than we love him. We must love him more than we love ourselves or anyone else.

The Philistines gathered together to fight against Israel: thirty thousand chariots, six thousand men to drive the chariots, and troops *as numerous as the sand on the seashore*. (1 Samuel 13:5 ULB)

The underlined phrase is an exaggeration. It means that there were many, many soldiers in the Philistine army.

Examples of Generalization

They found him, and they said to him, “*Everyone* is looking for you.” (Mark 1:37 ULB)

The disciples told Jesus that everyone was looking looking for him. They probably did not mean that everyone in the city was looking for him, but that many people were looking for him, or that all of Jesus closest friends there were looking for him.

But as his anointing teaches you about *all things* and is true and is not a lie, and even as it has taught you, remain in him. (1 John 2:27 ULB)

This is a generalization. God’s Spirit teaches us about all things that we need to know.

Caution

Do not assume that something is hyperbole just because it seems to be impossible. God does miraculous things.

... they saw Jesus *walking on the sea* and coming near the boat ... (John 6:19 ULB)

This is not hyperbole. Jesus really walked on the water. It is a literal statement.

... for *all* have sinned and come short of the glory of God. (Romans 3:23 ULB)

The word “all” here is not hyperbole. All humans have sinned. The only human who has never sinned is Jesus Christ, the Son of God.

Translation Strategies

If the hyperbole would be natural and people would understand it and not think that it is a lie, consider using it. If not, here is another option.

1. Express the meaning without the hyperbole. For example “all the people” could be translated as “large crowds of people.”

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1. Express the meaning without the hyperbole.

- **If anyone comes to me and does not *hate* his own father, mother, wife, children, brothers and sisters—yes, and his own life also—he cannot be my disciple.** (Luke 14:26 ULB)
 - “If anyone comes to me and does not *love me much more than* he loves his own father, mother, wife, children, brothers and sisters—yes, and his own life also—he cannot be my disciple.”
- **The Philistines gathered together to fight against Israel: thirty thousand chariots, six thousand men to drive the chariots, and troops *as numerous as the sand on the seashore*.** (1 Samuel 13:5 ULB)
 - “The Philistines gathered together to fight against Israel: thirty thousand chariots, six thousand men to drive the chariots, and *a great number of troops*.”

Idiom

This answers the question: What are idioms and how can I translate them?

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

- *Figures of Speech*

An idiom is a certain kind of figure of speech, the kind that usually cannot be correctly understood without being told its true meaning. Every language has them. Some English examples are:

- You are pulling my leg (This means, “You are telling me a lie”)
- Do not push the envelope (This means, “Do not take a matter to its extreme”)
- This house is under water (This means, “The debt owed for this house is greater than its actual value”)
- We are painting the town red (This means, “We are going around town tonight celebrating very intensely”)

Description

An idiom is a phrase that has a special meaning to the people of the language or culture that uses it. Its meaning may be different from what a person would understand from the meanings of the individual words that form the phrase.

he resolutely *set his face* to go to Jerusalem. (Luke 9:51 ULB)

The words “set his face” is an idiom that means “decided.”

Sometimes people may be able to understand an idiom from another culture, but it might sound like a strange way to express the meaning.

I am not worthy that you should *enter under my roof*. (Luke 7:6 ULB)

The words “enter under my roof” is an idiom that means “enter my house.”

Let these words go deeply into your ears (Luke 9:44 ULB)

This idiom means “Listen carefully and remember what I say.”

Purpose: An idiom is created in a culture probably somewhat by accident when someone describes something in an unusual way. But, when that unusual way communicates the message powerfully and people understand it clearly, other people start to use it.

Reasons this is a translation issue

- People can easily misunderstand idioms in the original languages of the Bible if they do not know the cultures that originally wrote the Bible.
- People can easily misunderstand idioms that are in the source language Bibles if they do not know the cultures that made those translations.

Examples from the Bible

“Then all Israel came to David at Hebron and said, ”Look, we are your flesh and bone.”
(1 Chronicles 11:1 ULB)

This means, “We and you belong to the same race, the same family.”

The kings of the earth take their stand together (Psalm 2:2 ULB)

This means, “The kings on earth plan together.”

the one who lifts up my head” (Psalm 3:3 ULB)

This means, “the one who helps me.”

Translation Strategies

If the idiom would be clearly understood in your language, consider using it. If not, here are some other options.

1. Translate the meaning plainly without using an idiom.
2. Use a different idiom that people use in your own language that has the same meaning.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1. Translate the meaning plainly without using an idiom.

- **Then all Israel came to David at Hebron and said, “Look, we are your flesh and bone.”** (1 Chronicles 11:1 ULB)
 - “...Look, we all belong to the same nation.”
- **he resolutely set his face to go to Jerusalem.** (Luke 9:51 ULB)
 - “He started to travel to Jerusalem, determined to reach it.”
- **I am not worthy that you should enter under my roof.** (Luke 7:6 ULB)
 - “I am not worthy that you should enter my house.”

2. Use an idiom that people use in your own language that has the same meaning.

- **Let these words go deeply into your ears** (Luke 9:44 ULB)
 - “Be all ears when I say these words to you.”
- **”My eyes grow dim from grief** (Psalm 6:7ULB)
 - “I am crying my eyes out”

Inclusive “We”

This answers the question: What is inclusive “we”?

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

- *Pronouns*

Some languages have more than one form of “we”: an **inclusive** form that means “I and you” and an **exclusive** form that means “I and someone else but not you.”

Description

Some languages have more than one form of “we”: an **inclusive** form that means “I and you” and an **exclusive** form that means “I and someone else but not you.” The inclusive form includes the person being spoken to and possibly others. This is also true for “us,” “our,” “ours,” and “ourselves.” Some languages have inclusive forms and exclusive forms for each of these.

See the pictures. The people on the right are the people that the speaker is talking to. The yellow highlight shows who the inclusive “we” and the exclusive “we” refer to.



Reason this is a translation issue - The Bible was first written in the Hebrew, Aramaic, and Greek languages. Like English, these languages do not have separate exclusive and inclusive forms for “we.” Translators whose language has separate exclusive and inclusive forms of “we” will need understand what the speaker meant so they can decide which form of “we” to use.

Examples from the Bible

... the shepherds said one to each other, “Let *us* now go to Bethlehem, and see this thing that has happened, which the Lord has made known to *us*.” (Luke 2:15 ULB)

The shepherds were speaking to one another. When they said “us”, they were including the people they were speaking to - one another.

Now it happened on one of those days that Jesus and his disciples entered into a boat, and he said to them, “Let *us* go over to the other side of the lake.” Then they set sail. (Luke 8:22 ULB)

When Jesus said “us,” he was referring to himself and to the disciples he was speaking to.

Watch the video for computer (see <http://youtu.be/PrMC2jdqY0A>) or tablet/phone (see <http://youtu.be/2K2gFIPMFVk>).

Next we recommend you learn about:

- *Exclusive “We”*

Litotes

This answers the question: What is litotes?

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

- *Figures of Speech*

Litotes is a strong statement made by negative phrases to strengthen a positive meaning. It is used to show that the opposite idea is not true.

Description

Litotes is a strong statement made by negative phrases to strengthen a positive meaning. It is used to show that the opposite idea is not true.

Reason this is a translation issue

People who speak some languages do not use litotes and would fail to understand that the statement is strengthened. They might think that it is weakened or even canceled.

Examples from the Bible

For you yourselves know, brothers, our coming to you was *not useless*, (1 Thessalonians 2:1 ULB)

By using litotes, Paul emphasized that his visit with them was very worthwhile.

All things were made through him. *Without him was not one thing* made that has been made. (John 1:3 ULB)

By using litotes John emphasized that the Son of God created absolutely everything.

Now when it became day, there was *no small excitement* among the soldiers, regarding what had happened to Peter. (Acts 12:18 ULB)

By using litotes, Luke emphasized that there was a lot of excitement or anxiety among the soldiers about what happened to Peter. (Peter had been in prison, and even though there were soldiers guarding him, he escaped when an angel let him out. So they were very concerned.)

And you, Bethlehem, in the land of Judah,
are *not the least* among the leaders of Judah,
for from you will come a ruler
who will shepherd my people Israel. (Matthew 2:6 ULB)

By using litotes, the prophet emphasized that Bethlehem would be a very important city.

Translation Strategies

If the litotes would be understood correctly, consider using it.

1. If the meaning would not be clear, say in a strong way what *is* true.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1. If the meaning would not be clear, say in a strong way what *is* true.

- **For you yourselves know, brothers, our coming to you was *not useless*,** (1 Thessalonians 2:1 ULB)
 - "For you yourselves know, brothers, our visit to you *did much good*."
- **Now when it became day, there was *no small excitement* among the soldiers, regarding what had happened to Peter.** (Acts 12:18 ULB)
 - "Now when it became day, there was *great excitement* among the soldiers, regarding what had happened to Peter."
 - "Now when it became day, the soldiers were *very concerned* because of what had happened to Peter."

Merism

This answers the question: What does the word merism mean and how can I translate phrases that have it?

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

- *Figures of Speech*

Merism is a figure of speech in which a person refers to something by speaking of two extreme parts of it.

Description

Merism is a figure of speech in which a person refers to something by speaking of two extreme parts of it.

“I am the Alpha and the Omega,” says the Lord God, “the one who is, and who was, and who is to come, the Almighty.” (Revelation 1:8, ULB)

I am the Alpha and the Omega, the First and the Last, the Beginning and the End. (Revelation 22:13, ULB)

“Alpha and Omega” is a merism that includes everything from the beginning to the end. It means eternal.

I praise you, Father, Lord of *heaven and earth*, (Matthew 11:25 ULB)

“Heaven and earth” is a merism that includes everything that exists.

Reason this is a translation issue

Some readers may think that the phrase only applies to the items mentioned. They may not realize that it refers to those two things and everything in between.

Examples from the Bible

From the rising of the sun to its setting, Yahweh’s name should be praised. (Psalm 113:3 ULB)

This underlined phrase is a merism because it speaks of the east and the west and everywhere in between. It means “everywhere.”

He will bless those who honor him, both *young and old*. (Psalm 115:13)

The underlined phrase is merism because it speaks of old people and young people and everyone in between. It means “everyone.”

Translation Strategies

If the merism would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using it. If not, here are other options:

1. Identify what the merism refers to without mentioning the parts.
2. Identify what the merism refers to and include the parts.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1. Identify what the merism refers to without mentioning the parts.

- **I praise you, Father, Lord of *heaven and earth*** (Matthew 11:25 ULB)
 - "I praise you, Father, Lord of *everything*"
- ***From the rising of the sun to its setting, Yahweh's name should be praised.*** (Psalm 113:3 ULB)
 - "*In all places*, people should praise Yahweh."

2. Identify what the merism refers to and include the parts.

- **I praise you, Father, Lord of *heaven and earth*** (Matthew 11:25 ULB)
 - "I praise you, Father, Lord of *everything, including both what is in heaven and what is on earth*"
- **He will bless those who honor him, both *young and old*.** (Psalm 115:13 ULB)
 - "He will bless *all those* who honor him, regardless of whether they are *young or old*."

Metaphor

This answers the question: What is a metaphor and how can I translate a sentence that has one?

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

- *Figures of Speech*
- *Simile*

Description

A metaphor is the use of words to speak of one thing as if it were a different thing. Sometimes a speaker does this in ways that are very common in the language. At other times, a speaker does this in ways that are less common in the language and that might even be unique.

1. First we will discuss very common metaphors.

The metaphors that are very common in a language are usually not very vivid. They may even be “dead.” Examples in English are “table leg,” “family tree,” and “the price of food is going up.” Examples in biblical languages are “hand” to mean “power,” “face” to mean “presence,” and “clothing” to mean emotions or moral qualities.

Metaphors like these are in constant use in the world’s languages, because they serve as convenient ways to organize thought. In general, languages speak of abstract qualities, such as power, presence, emotions, and moral qualities, as if they were objects that can be seen or held, or as if they were body parts, or as if they were events that you can watch happen.

When these metaphors are used in their normal ways, the speaker and audience do not normally even regard them as figurative language. This is why, for example, it would be wrong to translate the English expression, “The price of petrol is going up” into another language in a way that would draw undeserved attention to it, because English speakers do not view it as a vivid expression, that is, as an unusual expression that carries meaning in an unusual manner.

For a description of important patterns of this kind of metaphor, please see [Biblical Imagery - Common Patterns](#) and the pages it will direct you to.

2. Next we will discuss the less common metaphors, metaphors that are sometimes even unique in a language.

The speaker usually produces metaphors of this kind in order to emphasize the importance of what he is talking about. For example,

For you who fear my name, the sun of righteousness will rise with healing in its wings.
(Malachi 4:2 ULB)

Here God speaks about his salvation as if it were the sun rising to shine its rays on the people whom he loves. And he speaks of the sun’s rays as if they were wings. Also, he speaks of these wings as if they were bringing medicine that would heal his people.

We call this kind of metaphor “live.” It is unique in the biblical languages, which means that it is very memorable.

Parts of a Metaphor

When talking about metaphors, it can be helpful to talk about their parts. The thing someone speaks of is called the **topic**. The thing he calls it is the **image**. The way that they are similar is the **point of comparison**.

In the metaphor below, the speaker describes the woman he loves as a rose. The woman (his “love”) is the topic and the red rose is the image. Both are beautiful and delicate.

- My love is a red, red rose.

1. Sometimes the **topic** and the **image** are both stated clearly.

Jesus said to them. *“I am the bread of life. He who comes to me will not hunger, and he who believes on me will never thirst.”* (John 6:35 ULB)

Jesus called himself the bread of life. The topic is “I” and the image is “bread.” Bread is a food that people ate all the time. Just as people need to eat food in order to have physical life, people need to trust in Jesus in order to have spiritual life.

2. Sometimes only the **image** is stated clearly.

Produce *fruits* that are worthy of repentance (Luke 3:8 ULB)

The image here is “fruits”. The topic is not stated, but it is actions or behavior. Trees can produce good fruit or bad fruit, and people can produce good behavior or bad behavior. Fruits that are worthy of repentance are good behavior that is appropriate for people who have repented.

Purposes of this second kind of metaphor

- One purpose of metaphor is to teach people about something that they do not know (the **topic**) by showing that it is like something that they already know (the **image**).
- Another purpose is to emphasize that something has a particular quality or to show that it has that quality in an extreme way.
- Another purpose is to lead people to feel the same way about one thing as they would feel toward another.

Reasons this is a translation issue

- People may not realize that a word is being used as an image in a metaphor.
- People may not be familiar with the thing that is used as an image.
- If the topic is not stated, people may not know what the topic is.
- People may not know how the topic and the image are alike.

Translation Principles

- Make the meaning of a metaphor as clear to the target audience as it was to the original audience.

- Do not make the meaning of a metaphor more clear to the target audience than it was to the original audience.

Examples from the Bible

And yet, Yahweh, you are our father; we are the *clay*. You are our *potter*; and we all are the work of your hand. (Isaiah 64:8 ULB)

The example above has two metaphors. The topics are “we” and “you” and the images are “clay and ”potter.” Just as a potter takes clay and forms a jar or dish out of it, God makes us into what he wants us to be.

Jesus said to them, ”Take heed and beware of *the yeast of the Pharisees and Sadducees.*” The disciples reasoned among themselves and said, “It is because we took no bread.” (Matthew 16:6-7 ULB)

Jesus used a metaphor, but his disciples did not realize it. When he said “yeast,” they thought he was talking about bread, but “yeast” was the image in his metaphor about the teaching of the Pharisees and Sadducees. Since the disciples did not understand what Jesus meant, it would not be good to state clearly here what Jesus meant.

Translation Strategies

If people would understand the metaphor in the same way that the original readers would have understood it, go ahead and use it. If not, here are some other strategies.

1. If the metaphor is common and seems to be a normal way to say something in the biblical language, express the main idea in the simplest way preferred by your language.
2. If the target audience would think that the phrase should be understood literally, change the metaphor to a simile. Some languages do this by adding words such as “like” or “as.”
3. If the target audience would not know the **image**, see [Translate Unknowns](#) for ideas on how to translate that image.
4. If the target audience would not use that **image** for that meaning, use an image from your own culture instead. Be sure that it is an image that could have been possible in Bible times.
5. Or, if the target audience would not use that **image** for that meaning, simply state the truth that the metaphor was used to communicate.
6. If the target audience would not know what the **topic** is, then state the topic clearly. (However, do not do this if the original audience did not know what the topic was.)
7. If the target audience would not know how the topic is like the image, state it clearly.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1. If the metaphor is common and seems to be a normal way to say something in the biblical language, express the main idea in the simplest way preferred by your language.

- **For after David had in his own generation served the desires of God, *he fell asleep*, was laid with his fathers, and saw decay,** (Acts 13:36 ULB)

- "For after David had in his own generation served the desires of God, *he died*, was laid with his fathers, and saw decay."

2. If the target audience would think that the phrase should be understood literally, change the metaphor to a simile. Some languages do this by adding "like" or "as."

- **And yet, Yahweh, you are our father; we are the *clay*. You are our *potter*; and we all are the work of your hand.** (Isaiah 64:8 ULB)

- "And yet, Yahweh, you are our father; we are *like* clay. You are *like* a potter; and we all are the work of your hand."

3. If the target audience would not know the **image**, see [Translate Unknowns](#) for ideas on how to translate that image.

- **Saul, Saul, why do you persecute me? It is hard for you to *kick a goad*.** (Acts 26:14 ULB)

- "Saul, Saul, why do you persecute me? It is hard for you to kick against a pointed stick."

4. If the target audience would not use that **image** for that meaning, use an image from your own culture instead. Be sure that it is an image that could have been possible in Bible times.

- **And yet, Yahweh, you are our father; we are the *clay*. You are our *potter*; and we all are the work of your hand.** (Isaiah 64:8 ULB)

- "And yet, Yahweh, you are our father; we are the *wood*. You are our *carver*; and we all are the work of your hand."

- "And yet, Yahweh, you are our father; we are the *string*. You are the *weaver*; and we all are the work of your hand."

5. Or, if the target audience would not use that **image** for that meaning, simply state the truth that the metaphor was used to communicate.

- **I will make you become *fishers of men*.** (Mark 1:17 ULB)

- "I will make you become *people who gather men*."

- "Now you gather fish. I will make you *gather people*."

6. If the target audience would not know what the **topic** is, then state the topic clearly. (However, do not do this if the original audience did not know what the topic was.)

- **Yahweh lives; may *my rock* be praised. May the God of my salvation be exalted.** (Psalm 18:46 ULB)

- "Yahweh lives; *He is my rock*. May he be praised. May the God of my salvation be exalted.

7. If the target audience would not know how the topic is like the image, state it clearly.

- **Yahweh lives; may *my rock* be praised. May the God of my salvation be exalted.** (Psalm 18:46 ULB)
 - "Yahweh lives; may he be praised because like a huge rock, *he shields me from my enemies*. May the God of my salvation be exalted."
- **Saul, Saul, why do you persecute me? It is hard for you *to kick a goad*.** (Acts 26:14 ULB)
 - "Saul, Saul, why do you persecute me? You *fight against me and hurt yourself* like an ox that kicks against its owner's pointed stick."

To learn more about common metaphors read:

- [Biblical Imagery - Common Patterns](#)

Metonymy

This answers the question: What is a metonymy?

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

- *Figures of Speech*

Many times the Bible uses metonymy. If you do not recognize it as a metonymy you will not understand the passage or worse yet, get the wrong understanding of the passage.

Description

Metonymy is a figure of speech in which a thing or idea is called not by its own name, but by the name of something closely associated with it. A **metonym** is a word or phrase used as a substitute for something it is associated with.

and *the blood* of Jesus his Son cleanses us from all sin. (1 John 1:7 ULB)

The blood represents Christ's death.

He took the cup in the same way after supper, saying, "*This cup* is the new covenant in my blood, which is poured out for you. (Luke 22:20 ULB)

The cup represents the wine that is in the cup.

Metonymy can be used

- as a shorter way of referring to something
- to make an abstract idea more meaningful by referring to it with the name of a concrete object associated with it.

Reason this is a translation issue

- If a metonym is used, people need to be able to understand what it represents.

Examples from the Bible

The Lord God will give him *the throne* of his father, David. (Luke 1:32 ULB)

A throne represents the authority of a king. Throne is a metonym for "kingly authority," "kingship" or, "reign." This means that God would make him become the king who was to follow King David.

Immediately his mouth was opened (Luke 1:64 ULB)

The mouth here represents the power to speak. This means that he was able to talk again.

who warned you to flee from *the wrath* that is coming? (Luke 3:7 ULB)

The word “wrath” or “anger” is a metonym for “punishment.” God was extremely angry with the people and, as a result, he would punish them.

Translation Strategies

If people would easily understand the metonym, consider using it. Otherwise, here is an option.

1. Use the metonym along with the name of the thing it represents.
2. Use the name of the thing the metonym represents.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1. Use the metonym along with the name of the thing it represents.

- **He took the cup in the same way after supper, saying, “*This cup* is the new covenant in my blood, which is poured out for you.** (Luke 22:20 ULB)
 - “He took the cup in the same way after supper, saying, “*The wine in this cup* is the new covenant in my blood, which is poured out for you.”

2. Use the name of the thing the metonym represents.

- **The Lord God will give him *the throne* of his father, David.** (Luke 1:32 ULB)
 - “The Lord God will give him *the kingly authority* of his father, David.”
 - “The Lord God will *make him king* like his ancestor, King David.”
- **who warned you to flee from *the wrath* to come?** (Luke 3:7 ULB)
 - “who warned you to flee from God’s coming *punishment*?”

To learn about some common metonymies, we suggest you read:

- [Biblical Imagery - Common Metonymies](#)

Nominal Adjectives

This answers the question: How do I translate adjectives that act like nouns?

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

- *Parts of Speech*

Many times in the Bible adjectives are used as nouns to describe a group of people.

Description

In some languages an adjective can be used to refer to a class of things that the adjective describes. When it does, it acts like a noun. For example, the word “rich” is an adjective. Here are two sentences that show that “rich” is an adjective.

The rich man had huge numbers of flocks and herds, (2 Samuel 12:2 ULB)

The adjective “rich” comes before the word “man” and describes “man.”

He will not be rich; his wealth will not last; (Job 15:29 ULB)

The adjective “rich” comes after the verb “be” and describes “He.”

...the rich must not give more than the half shekel, and *the poor* must not give less.
(Exodus 30:15 ULB)

In Exodus 30:15, the word “rich” acts as a noun in the phrase “the rich,” and it refers to rich people. The word “poor” also acts as a noun and refers to poor people.

Reason this is a translation issue

- Some languages do not use adjectives this way.
- Readers may think that the text is talking about one particular person when it is really talking about many people whom the adjective describes.

Examples from the Bible

The scepter of wickedness must not rule in the land of *the righteous*. (Psalms 125:3 ULB)

“The righteous” here are people who are righteous, not one particular righteous person.

Blessed are *the meek* (Matthew 5:5 ULB)

“The meek” here are people who are meek, not one particular meek person.

Translation Strategies

If your language uses adjectives as nouns to refer to a class of people, consider using the adjectives this way. If it would sound strange, or if the meaning would be unclear or wrong, here is another option:

1. Use the adjective with a plural form of the noun that the adjective describes.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1. Use the adjective with a plural form of the noun that the adjective describes.
 - **The scepter of wickedness must not rule in the land of *the righteous*.** (Psalms 125:3 ULB)
 - "The scepter of wickedness must not rule in the land of *righteous people*."
 - **Blessed are *the meek*** (Matthew 5:5 ULB)
 - "Blessed are *people who are meek*"

Parallelism

This answers the question: What is parallelism?

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

- *Figures of Speech*

Description

In **parallelism** two phrases or clauses that are similar in structure or idea are used together. There are different kinds of parallelism. Some of them are the following:

1. The second clause or phrase means the same as the first.
2. The second clarifies or strengthens the meaning of the first.
3. The second completes what is said in the first.
4. The second says something that contrasts with the first.

Parallelism is most commonly found in Old Testament poetry, such as in the books of Psalms and Proverbs. It also occurs in Greek in the New Testament, both in the four gospels and in the apostles' letters.

Reason this is a translation issue

Some languages would not use the kind of parallelism in which the two phrases mean the same thing. They would either think it odd that someone said the same thing twice, or they think that the two phrases must have some difference in meaning.

Examples from the Bible

1. The second clause or phrase means the same as the first.

You make him to rule over the works of your hands;
you have put all things under his feet (Psalm 8:6 ULB)

Both lines say that God made man the ruler of everything.

2. The second clarifies or strengthens the meaning of the first.

The eyes of Yahweh are everywhere,
keeping watch over the evil and the good. (Proverbs 15:3 ULB)

The second line tells more specifically what Yahweh watches.

3. The second completes what is said in the first.

I lift up my voice to Yahweh,
and he answers me from his holy hill. (Psalm 3:4 ULB)

The second line tells what Yahweh does in response to what the person does in the first clause.

4. The second says something that contrasts with the first.

For Yahweh approves of the way of the righteous,
but the way of the wicked will perish. (Psalm 1:6 ULB)

This contrasts what happens to righteous people with what happens to wicked people.

A gentle answer turns away wrath,
but a harsh word stirs up anger. (Proverbs 15:1 ULB)

This contrasts what happens when someone gives a gentle answer with what happens when someone says something harsh.

Translation Strategies

1. For most kinds of parallelism, it is good to translate both of the clauses or phrases.
2. When the two clauses or phrases mean the same thing, some languages would not translate them both. (See [Parallelism with the Same Meaning](#))

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(See [Parallelism with the Same Meaning](#))

Next we recommend you learn about:

- [Parallelism with the Same Meaning](#)

Personification

This answers the question: What is personification?

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

- *Figures of Speech*

Personification is a figure of speech in which someone speaks of something as if it could do things that animals or people can do. People often speak this way because it makes it easier to talk about things that we cannot see, such as wisdom and sin.

Does not Wisdom call out? (Proverbs 8:1 ULB)

sin crouches at the door (Genesis 4:7 ULB)

Some languages do not use personification, and some languages use it only in certain situations.

Description

Personification is a figure of speech in which someone speaks of something as if it could do things that animals or people can do. People often do this because it makes it easier to talk about things that we cannot see, such as wisdom, sin, and wind. For example:

Does not Wisdom call out? (Proverbs 8:1 ULB)

sin crouches at the door (Genesis 4:7 ULB)

People also do this because it is sometimes easier to talk about relationships between people and other people than about relationships between people and non-human things, such as wealth.

You cannot serve God and wealth. (Matthew 6:24 ULB)

Reason this is a translation issue

- Some languages do not use personification.
- Some languages use personification only in certain situations.

Examples from the Bible

You cannot serve God and wealth. (Matthew 6:24 ULB)

Jesus speaks of wealth as if it were a master whom people might serve. Loving money and basing one's decisions on it is like serving it as a slave would serve his master.

Does not Wisdom call out? Does not Understanding raise her voice? (Proverbs 8:1 ULB)

The author speaks of wisdom and understanding as if they are a woman who calls out to teach people. They are not something hidden, but something obvious that people should pay attention to.

Translation Strategies

If the personification would not be understood clearly, here are some strategies for dealing with it.

1. Add words or phrases to make it clear.
2. Use the words “like” or “as” to show that the sentences is not to be understood literally.
3. Find a way to translate it without the personification.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1. Add words or phrases to make it clear.

- **sin crouches at the door** (Genesis 4:7 ULB) - God speaks of sin as a wild animal that is waiting for the chance to attack. This shows how dangerous sin is. An additional phrase can be added to make this danger clear.
 - “sin is at your door, waiting to attack you”

2. Use the words “like” or “as” to show that the sentences is not to be understood literally.

- **sin crouches at the door** (Genesis 4:7 ULB) - This can be translated with the word “as.”
 - ”sin is about to destroy you, just *as* a wild animal could harm a person.”

3. Find a way to translate it without the personification.

- **even the winds and the sea obey him** (Matthew 8:27 ULB) - The men speak of the wind and the sea as if they are able to hear and obey Jesus as people can. This could also be translated without the idea of obedience by speaking of Jesus controlling them.
 - “He even controls the winds and the sea.”

Note: We have broadened our definition of “personification” to include “zoomorphism” (speaking of other things as if they had animal characteristics) and “anthropomorphism” (speaking of other things as if they had human characteristics).

Next we recommend you learn about:

- *Apostrophe*
- *Biblical Imagery - Common Patterns*

Rhetorical Question

This answers the question: What are rhetorical questions and how can I translate them?

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

- *Figures of Speech*
- *Sentences*

A rhetorical question is a question to which the speaker does not expect an answer because he is not looking for information. Speakers use rhetorical questions to express deep emotion or to encourage hearers to think deeply about something. The Bible contains many rhetorical questions, often to express sarcasm or to rebuke or scold the hearer. Speakers of some languages use rhetorical questions for other reasons as well.

Description

A rhetorical question is a question to which the speaker does not expect an answer because he is not looking for information. Speakers often use rhetorical questions to rebuke or scold people.

Those who stood by said, *Is this how you insult God's high priest?*" (Acts 23:4 ULB) The people did not ask this question in order to get information. Rather they used it to scold Paul because they did not think he should have spoken as he did to the high priest.

The Bible contains many rhetorical questions. Some of the purposes of these rhetorical questions are to remind people of something that they already know, to express strong emotion, to say something in a strong way, or to introduce something they want to talk about.

Reasons this is a translation issue

- Some readers may think that a question is a request for information.
- Some languages use rhetorical questions only for scolding.
- Some readers might think that the purpose of a question is something other than what it really is.

Examples from the Bible

Do you not still rule the kingdom of Israel? (1 Kings 21:7 ULB)

Jezebel used the question above to remind King Ahab of something he already knew: he still ruled the kingdom of Israel. She did this in order to rebuke him for being unwilling to take over a poor man's property. She was implying that since he was the king of Israel he should feel free to take the man's property.

Will a virgin forget her jewelry, a bride her veils? Yet my people have forgotten me for days without number! (Jeremiah 2:32 ULB)

God used the question above to remind his people of something they already knew: a woman would never forget her jewelry and veils. He then rebuked his people for forgetting him, who is so much greater than those things.

Why did I not die when I came out from the womb? (Job 3:11 ULB)

Job used the question above to show how sad he was that he did not die as soon as he was born. He wished that he had not lived.

And why has it happened to me that the mother of my Lord should come to me? (Luke 1:43 ULB)

Elizabeth used the question above to show how surprised and happy she was that the mother of her Lord came to her.

Or what man among you is there who, if his son asks him for a loaf of bread, will give him a stone? (Matthew 7:9 ULB)

Jesus used the question above to remind the people of something they already knew: a good father would never give his son something bad to eat.

Therefore, if you who are evil know how to give good gifts to your children, how much more will your Father from heaven give good things to those who ask him? (Matthew 7:11 ULB)

Jesus used this question to teach the people in an emphatic way that God gives good things to those who ask him.

What is the kingdom of God like, and what can I compare it to? It is like a mustard seed which a man took and threw into his garden... (Luke 13:18-19 ULB)

Jesus used the question above to introduce what he was going to talk about. He was going to compare the kingdom of God to something.

Translation Strategies

Be sure you know that you are dealing with a rhetorical question and not an information question. Then be sure you know what the purpose of the rhetorical question is. Is it to encourage or rebuke or shame the hearer? Is it to bring up a new topic? Is it to do something else?

If using the rhetorical question would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider doing so. If not, here are other options:

1. Add the answer after the question.
2. Change the rhetorical question to a statement or exclamation.
3. Change the rhetorical question to a statement, and then follow it with a short question.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1. Add the answer after the question.

- **Will a virgin forget her jewelry, a bride her veils? Yet my people have forgotten me for days without number!** (Jeremiah 2:32 ULB)
 - *Will a virgin forget her jewelry, a bride her veils? Of course not! Yet my people have forgotten me for days without number!*
- **Or what man among you is there who, if his son asks him for a loaf of bread, will give him a stone?** (Matthew 7:9 ULB)
 - *”Or what man among you is there who, if his son asks him for a loaf of bread, will give him a stone? None of you would do that!”*

2. Change the rhetorical question to a statement or exclamation.

- **What is the kingdom of God like, and what can I compare it to? It is like a mustard seed...** (Luke 13:18-19 ULB)
 - *“This is what the kingdom of God is like. It is like a mustard seed...”*
- **Is this how you insult God’s high priest?** (Acts 23:4 ULB)
 - *You should not insult God’s high priest!”*
- **Why did I not die when I came out from the womb?** (Job 3:11 ULB)
 - *I wish I had died when I came out from the womb!”*
- **And why has it happened to me that the mother of my Lord should come to me?** (Luke 1:43 ULB)
 - *“How wonderful it is that the mother of my Lord has come to me!”*

3. Change the rhetorical question to a statement, and then follow it with a short question.

- **Do you not still rule the kingdom of Israel?** (1 Kings 21:7 ULB)
 - *”You still rule the kingdom of Israel, don’t you?”*

Simile

This answers the question: What is a simile?

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

- *Figures of Speech*

A simile is a comparison of two things that are not normally thought to be similar. One is said to be “like” the other. It focuses on a particular trait the two items have in common, and it includes the words “like,” “as” or “than.”

Description

A simile is a comparison of two things that are not normally thought to be similar. It focuses on a particular trait the two items have in common, and it includes the words “like,” “as” or “than.”

When he saw the crowds, he had compassion for them, because they were worried and confused, because they were like sheep without a shepherd. (Matthew 9:36 ULB)

Jesus compared the crowds of people to sheep without a shepherd. Sheep grow frightened when they do not have a good shepherd to lead them in safe places. The crowds were like that because they did not have good religious leaders.

See, I send you out *as sheep in the midst of wolves*, so be as wise *as serpents* and harmless *as doves*. (Matthew 10:16 ULB)

Jesus compared his disciples to sheep and their enemies to wolves. Wolves attack sheep. Jesus’ enemies would attack his disciples.

For the word of God is living and active and sharper *than any two-edged sword*. (Hebrews 4:12 ULB)

God’s word is compared to a two-edged sword. A two-edged sword is a weapon that can easily cut through a person’s flesh. God’s word is very effective in showing what is in a person’s heart and thoughts.

Purposes of Simile

- A simile can teach about something that is unknown by showing how it is similar to something that is known.
- A simile can emphasize a particular trait, sometimes in a way that gets people’s attention.
- Similes help form a picture in the mind or help the reader experience what he is reading about more fully.

Reasons this is a translation issue

- People may not know how the two items are similar.
- People may not be familiar with the item that something is compared to.

Examples from the Bible

Suffer hardship with me, *as a good soldier of Christ Jesus*. (2 Timothy 2:3 ULB)

In this simile, Paul compares suffering with what soldiers endure, and he encourages Timothy to follow their example.

for as the lightning appears when it flashes from one part of the sky to another part of the sky, so will the Son of Man be in his day. (Luke 17:24 ULB)

This verse does not tell how the Son of Man will be like the lightning. But from the context we can understand from the verses before it that just as lightning flashes suddenly and everyone can see it, the Son of Man will come suddenly and everyone will be able to see him. No one will have to be told about it.

Translation Strategies

If people would understand the correct meaning of a simile, consider using it. If they would not, here are some strategies you can use:

1. If people do not know how the two items are alike, tell how they are alike. However, do not do this if the meaning was not clear to the original audience.
2. If people are not familiar with the item that something is compared to, use an item from your own culture. Be sure that it is one that could have been used in the cultures of the Bible.
3. Simply describe the item without comparing it to another.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1 If people do not know how the two items are alike, tell how they are alike. However, do not do this if the meaning was not clear to the original audience.

- **See, I send you out *as sheep in the midst of wolves***, (Matthew 10:16 ULB) - This compares the danger that Jesus' disciples would be in with the danger that sheep are in when they are surrounded by wolves.
 - "See, I send you out among wicked people and you will be in danger from them as sheep are in danger when they are among wolves."
- **For the word of God is living and active and sharper *than any two-edged sword***. (Hebrews 4:12 ULB)
 - "For the word of God is living and active and *more powerful than a very sharp two-edged sword*"

2. If people are not familiar with the item that something is compared to, use an item from your own culture. Be sure that it is one that could have been used in the cultures of the Bible.

- **See, I send you out *as sheep in the midst of wolves***, (Matthew 10:16 ULB) - If people do not know what sheep and wolves are, or that wolves kill and eat sheep, you could use some other animal that kills another.
 - "See, I send you out *as chickens in the midst of wild dogs*,"
- **How often did I long to gather your children together, just as a hen gathers her chickens under her wings, but you did not agree!** (Matthew 23:37 ULB)
 - How often I wanted to gather your children together, as a mother closely watches over her infants, but you refused!
- **If you have faith even as small as a grain of mustard**, (Matthew 17:20 ULB)
 - "If you have faith even as small as a tiny seed"

3. Simply describe the item without comparing it to another.

- **See, I send you out *as sheep in the midst of wolves***, (Matthew 10:16 ULB)
 - "See, I send you out and people will want to harm you."
- **How often did I long to gather your children together, just as a hen gathers her chickens under her wings, but you did not agree!** (Matthew 23:37 ULB)
 - "How often I wanted to protect you, but you refused!"

Next we recommend you learn about:

- *Metaphor*
- *Biblical Imagery - Common Patterns*

Synecdoche

This answers the question: What does the word synecdoche mean?

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

- *Figures of Speech*

Synecdoche is when a speaker uses a part of something to refer to the whole or uses the whole to refer to a part.

Description

Synecdoche is when a speaker uses a part of something to refer to the whole or uses the whole to refer to a part.

My soul exalts the Lord. (Luke 1:46 ULB)

Mary was very happy about what the Lord was doing, so she said “my soul”, the part of herself that has emotions, to refer to her whole self.

the Pharisees said to him, “Look, why are they doing something that is not lawful ...?”
(Mark 2:24 ULB)

The Pharisees who were standing there did not all say the same words at the same time. Instead, it is more likely that one man representing the group said those words.

Reasons this is a translation issue

- Some readers may understand the words literally.
- Some readers may realize that they are not to understand the words literally, but they may not know what the meaning is.

Example from the Bible

I looked on all the deeds that *my hands* had accomplished (Ecclesiastes 2:11 ULB)

“My hands” is a synecdoche for the whole person, because clearly the legs and the rest of the body and the mind were also involved.

Translation Strategies

If the synecdoche would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using it. If not, here is another option:

1. State specifically what the synecdoche refers to.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1. State specifically what the synecdoche refers to.

- **My soul exalts the Lord.** (Luke 1:46 ULB)
 - "I exalt the Lord."
- **the Pharisees said to him** (Mark 2:24 ULB)
 - "a representative of the Pharisees said to him"
- **I looked on all the deeds that my hands had accomplished** (Ecclesiastes 2:11 ULB)
 - "I looked on all the deeds that I had accomplished"

Next we recommend you learn about:

- *Metonymy*
- *Biblical Imagery - Common Metonymies*

Forms of You

This answers the question: What are the different forms of you?

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

- *Forms of 'You' - Singular*
- *Forms of 'You' - Dual/Plural*

Singular, Dual, and Plural

Some languages have more than one word for “you” based on how many people the word “you” refers to. The **singular** form refers to one person, and the **plural** form refers to more than one person. Some languages also have a **dual** form which refers to two people, and some have other forms that refer to three or four people.

Watch the video for Singular, Dual, and Plural “you” for computer (see <http://youtu.be/cPtjzJ2Advk>) or tablet/phone (see <http://youtu.be/AVITfDEk8nc>).

Sometimes in the Bible a speaker uses a singular form of “you” even though he is speaking to a crowd.

- *Forms of 'You' - Singular to a Crowd*

Formal and Informal

Some languages have more than one form of “you” based on the relationship between the speaker and the person he is talking to. People use the **formal** form of “you” when speaking to someone who is older, or has higher authority, or is someone they do not know very well. People use the **informal** form when speaking to someone who is not older, or does not have higher authority, or is a family member or close friend. Watch the video on Formal and Informal ‘You’ on the **computer** or on the **tablet/phone**. For help with translating these, we suggest you read:

- *Forms of “You” - Formal or Informal*

Translating Son and Father

This answers the question: Why are these concepts important in referring to God?

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

- *Create Faithful Translations*
- *Son of God and God the Father*

unfoldingWord supports only Bible translations that represent these concepts when they refer to God.

“Father” and “Son” are names that God calls himself in the Bible.

The Bible shows that God called Jesus his Son.

After he was baptized, Jesus came up immediately from the water, and... a voice came out of the heavens saying, *“This is my beloved Son. I am very pleased with him.”* (Matthew 3:16-17 ULB)

The Bible shows that Jesus called God his Father.

Jesus said, *“I praise you Father, Lord of heaven and earth,... no one knows the Son except the Father, and no one knows the Father except the Son”* (Matthew 11:25-27 ULB) (See also: John 6:26-57 ULB)

Christians have found that “Father” and “Son” are the ideas that most essentially describe the eternal relationship of the First and Second Persons of the Trinity to each other. The Bible indeed refers to them in various ways, but no other terms reflect the kind of eternal love and intimacy between these Persons, nor the interdependent eternal relationship between them.

Jesus referred to God in the following terms:

Baptize them into *the name of the Father, of the Son, and of the Holy Spirit.* (Matthew 28:19 ULB)

The intimate, loving relationship between the Father and the Son is eternal.

no one knows who the Son is except the Father, and no one knows who the Father is except the Son. (Luke 10:22 ULB)

Jesus said, *“Father, glorify your Son so that the Son may glorify you... I glorified you on the earth,... Now Father, glorify me... with the glory that I had with you before the world was created.”* (John 17:1-5 ULB)

The Father *loves* the Son. (John 3:35-36; 5:19-20 ULB)

I *love* the Father, I do what the Father commands me, just as he gave me the commandment. (John 14:31 ULB)

Human fathers and sons are not perfect, but the Bible still uses those terms for the Father and Son, who are perfect.

Just as today, human father-son relationships during Bible times were never as loving or perfect as the relationship between Jesus and his Father. But this does not mean that the translator should avoid the concepts of father and son. The scriptures use these terms to refer to God, the perfect Father and Son, as well as to sinful human fathers and sons. In referring to God as Father and Son, choose words in your language that are widely used and refer to a human “father” and “son.”

Translation Strategies

1. Think through all the possibilities that your language has to translate the words “son” and “father.” Determine which words in your language best represent the divine “Son” and “Father.”
2. If your language has more than one word for “son,” use the word that has the closest meaning to “only son” (or “first son” if necessary).
3. If your language has more than one word for “father,” use the word that has the closest meaning to “birth father,” rather than “adoptive father.”

The following pages will help you with translating “Father” and “Son.”

- [God the Father, heavenly Father, Father](#)
- [Son of God, the Son, Son](#)

How to Translate Names

This answers the question: How can I translate names that are new to my culture?

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

- *Translate Unknowns*

The Bible has names of many people, groups of people, and places. Some of these names may sound strange and be hard to say. Sometimes readers may not know what a name refers to, and sometimes they may need to understand what a name means. This page will help you see how you can translate these names and how you can help people understand what they need to know about them.

Description

The Bible has names of many people, groups of people, and places. All names in the Bible have meaning. Most of the time, names in the Bible are used simply to identify the people and places they refer to. But sometimes the meaning of a name is especially important.

It was this *Melchizedek*, king of Salem, priest of God Most High, who met Abraham returning from the slaughter of the kings and blessed him. (Hebrews 7:1ULB)

Here the writer uses the name “Melchizedek” simply to refer to a man who had that name, and the title “king of Salem” simply to tell us something about Melchizedek.

His name “Melchizedek” means “king of righteousness,” and also “king of Salem,” that is, “king of peace. (Hebrews 7:2 ULB)

Here the writer explains the meanings of Melchizedek’s name and title.

Reasons this is a translation issue

- Readers may not know some of the names in the Bible. They may not know whether a name refers to a person or place or something else.
- Readers may need to understand the meaning of a name in order to understand the passage.
- Some names may have different sounds or combinations of sounds that are not used in your language or are unpleasant to say in your language.
- Some people and places in the Bible have two names. Readers may not realize that two names refer to the same person or place.

Examples from the Bible

You went over the *Jordan* and came to *Jericho*. The leaders of Jericho fought against you, along with the *Amorites* (Joshua 24:11 ULB)

Readers might not know that “Jordan” is the name of a river, “Jericho” is the name of a city, and “Amorites” is the name of a group of people.

she said, “Do I really continue to see, even after he has seen me?” Therefore the well was called *Beerlahairoi*; (Genesis 16:13-14 ULB)

Readers may not understand the second sentence if they do not know that “Beerlahairoi” means “Well of the the Living One who sees me.”

She named him *Moses* and said, “Because I drew him from the water.” (Exodus 2:11 ULB)

Readers may not understand why she said this if they do not know that the name *Moses* sounds like the Hebrew words “pull out.”

Saul was in agreement with his death (Acts 8:1 ULB)

It came about in Iconium that *Paul* and Barnabas entered together into the synagogue (Acts 14:1 ULB)

Readers may not know that the names *Saul* and *Paul* refer to the same person.

Translation Strategies

1. If readers cannot easily understand from the context what kind of a thing a name refers to, you can add a word to clarify it.
2. If readers need to understand the meaning of a name in order to understand what is said about it, copy the name and tell about its meaning either in the text or in a footnote.
3. Or if readers need to understand the meaning of a name in order to understand what is said about it, and that name is used only once, translate the meaning of the name.
4. If a person or place has two different names, use one name all of the time and write a footnote when the source text uses the name that is used less frequently.
5. Or use whatever name is given in the source text, and add a footnote that explains who or what the name refers to.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1. If readers cannot easily understand from the context what kind of a thing a name refers to, you can add a word to clarify it.

- **You went over the *Jordan* and came to *Jericho*. The leaders of *Jericho* fought against you, along with the *Amorites*** (Joshua 24:11 ULB)
 - “You went over the *Jordan River* and came to the city of *Jericho*. The leaders of *Jericho* fought against you, along with *the tribe of the Amorites*”
- **Shortly after, some *Pharisees* came and said to him, “Go and leave here because *Herod* wants to kill you.”** (Luke 13:31 ULB)

- “Shortly after, some Pharisees came and said to him, ”Go and leave here because *King Herod* wants to kill you.”

2. If readers need to understand the meaning of a name in order to understand what is said about it, copy the name and tell about its meaning either in the text or in a footnote.

- **She named him *Moses* and said, “Because I drew him from the water.”** (Exodus 2:11 ULB)
 - ”She named him *Moses*, which sounds like ‘drawn out,’ and said, “Because I drew him from the water.”

3. Or if readers need to understand the meaning of a name in order to understand what is said about it, and that name is used only once, translate the meaning of the name.

- **she said, “Do I really continue to see, even after he has seen me?” Therefore the well was called *Beerlahairoi*;** (Genesis 16:13-14 ULB)
 - “she said, ”Do I really continue to see, even after he has seen me?” Therefore the well was called *Well of the One who sees me*;

4. If a person or place has two different names, use one name most of the time and the other name only when the text talks about that name. Write a footnote when the source text uses the name that is used less frequently.

For example, Paul is called “Saul” before Acts 13 and “Paul” after Acts 13. You could translate his name as “Paul” all of the time, except in Acts 13:9 where it talks about him having both names.

- **a young man named *Saul*** (Acts 7:58 ULB)
 - ”a young man named *Paul*”¹ The footnote would look like:
 - ◇ ^[1]Most versions say Saul here, but most of the time in the Bible he is called Paul.

- **But *Saul*, who is also called *Paul*, was filled with the Holy Spirit;** (Acts 13:9 ULB)
 - ”But *Saul*, who is also called *Paul*, was filled with the Holy Spirit;”

5. Or if a person or place has two names, use whatever name is given in the source text, and add a footnote that explains who or what the name refers to.

For example, you could write “Saul” where the source text has “Saul” and “Paul” where the source text has “Paul.”

- **a young man named *Saul*** (Acts 7:58 ULB)
 - ”a young man named *Saul*”
- **But *Saul*, who is also called *Paul*, was filled with the Holy Spirit;** (Acts 13:9 ULB) *

“But __Saul__, who is also called __Paul__, was filled with the Holy Spirit;” * **It came about in Iconium that __Paul__ and Barnabas entered together into the synagogue**
 ([[en:bible:notes:act:14:01 | Acts 14:1 ULB)

- "It came about in Iconium that *Paul*¹ and Barnabas entered together into the synagogue"
(Acts 14:1 ULB) The footnote would look like:
 - ◇ ^[1]This is the man that was called Saul before Acts 13.

Next we recommend you learn about:

- *Copy or Borrow Words*

Numbers

This answers the question: How do I translate numbers?

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

- *Translate Unknowns*

There are many numbers in the Bible. They can be written as words, such as “five” or as numerals, such as “5”. Some numbers are very large, such as “two hundred” (200), “twenty-two thousand” (22,000) or “one hundred million” (100,000,000.) Some languages do not have words for all of these numbers. Translators need to decide how to translate numbers and whether to write them as words or numerals.

Description

There are many numbers in the Bible. Some are small, such as “five” (5) and “fifteen” (15). Others are very large, such as “two hundred” (200), twenty-two thousand (22,000) or “one hundred million” (100,000,000). Some numbers are exact and others are rounded.

Abram was *eighty-six* years old when Hagar bore Ishmael to Abram. (Genesis 16:16 ULB)

Eighty-six (86) is an exact number.

That day about *three thousand* men out of the people died. (Exodus 32:28 ULB)

Here the number three thousand is a round number. It may have been a little more than that or a little less than that. The word “about” shows that it is not an exact number.

Reason this is a translation issue: Some languages do not have words for some of these numbers.

Translation Principles

- Exact numbers should be translated as closely and specifically as they can be.
- Rounded numbers can be translated more generally.

Examples from the Bible

When Jared had lived *162* years, he became the father of Enoch. After he became the father of Enoch, Jared lived *eight hundred* years. He became the father of more sons and daughters. Jared lived *962* years, and then he died. (Genesis 5:18-20 ULB)

The numbers 162, eight hundred, and 962 are exact numbers and should be translated with something as close to those numbers as possible.

Our sister, may you be the mother of *thousands of ten thousands*. (Genesis 24:60 ULB)

This is a rounded number. It does not say exactly how many descendants she should have, but it was a huge number of them.

Translation Strategies

1. Write numbers using numerals.
2. Write numbers using your language's words or the gateway language words for those numbers.
3. Write numbers using words, and put the numerals in parenthesis after them.
4. Combine words for large numbers.
5. Use a very general expression for very large rounded numbers and write the numeral in parentheses afterward.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

- **Now, see, at great effort I have prepared for Yahweh's house 100,000 talents of gold, one million talents of silver, and bronze and iron in large quantities.** (1 Chronicles 22:14 ULB)

1. Write numbers using numerals.

- "I have prepared for Yahweh's house 100,000 talents of gold, one 1,000,000 talents of silver, and bronze and iron in large quantities."

2. Write numbers using your language's words or the gateway language words for those numbers.

- "I have prepared for Yahweh's house *one hundred thousand* talents of gold, *one million* talents of silver, and bronze and iron in large quantities. "

3. Write numbers using words, and put the numerals in parenthesis after them.

- "I have prepared for Yahweh's house *one hundred thousand (100,000)* talents of gold, *one million (1,000,000)* talents of silver, and bronze and iron in large quantities.

4. Combine words for large numbers.

- "I have prepared for Yahweh's house *one hundred thousand* talents of gold, *a thousand thousand* talents of silver, and bronze and iron in large quantities.

5. Use a very general expression for very large rounded numbers and write the numeral in parentheses afterward.

- "I have prepared for Yahweh's house *a great amount of gold (100,000 talents), ten times that amount of silver (1,000,000 talents),* and bronze and iron in large quantities.

Consistency

Be consistent in your translations. Decide how the numbers will be translated, using numbers or numerals. There are different ways of being consistent.

- Use words to represent numbers all of the time. (You might have very long words.)
- Use numerals to represent numbers all of the time.
- Use words to represent the numbers that your language has words for and use numerals for the numbers that your language does not have words for.
- Use words for low numbers and numerals for high numbers.
- Use words for numbers that require few words and numerals for numbers that require more than a few words.
- Use words to represent numbers, and write the numerals in parentheses after them.

Consistency in the ULB and UDB

The ULB (Unlocked Literal Bible) and the UDB (Unlocked Dynamic Bible) use words for numbers that have only one or two words (nine, sixteen, three hundred). They use numerals for numbers that have more than two words (the numerals “130” instead of “one hundred thirty”).

When Adam had lived *130* years, he became the father of a son in his own likeness, after his image, and he called his name Seth. After Adam became the father of Seth, he lived *eight hundred* years. He became the father of more sons and daughters. Adam lived *930* years, and then he died. (Genesis 5:3-5 ULB)

Next we recommend you learn about:

- *Ordinal Numbers*
- *Fractions*

Textual Variants

This answers the question: Why does the ULB have missing or added verses, and should I translate them?

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

- *Choosing a Source Text*
- *Original Manuscripts*

Thousands of years ago, people wrote the books of the Bible. Other people then copied them by hand and translated them. Sometimes the copiers added sentences by mistake or because they wanted to explain something. Modern Bibles are translations of the old copies. Some modern Bibles have some of these sentences that were added. In the ULB, these added sentences are usually written in footnotes.

Description

Thousands of years ago, people wrote the books of the Bible. Other people copied them by hand and translated them. They did this work very carefully, and over the years many people made thousands of copies. However people who looked at them later saw that there were small differences between them. Some copiers accidentally left out some words, and some mistook a word for another that looked like it. Occasionally they added words or even whole sentences, either by accident, or because they wanted to explain something.

Bible scholars have read many old copies and compared them with each other. For each place in the Bible where there was a difference, they have figured out which wordings are most likely correct. The translators of the ULB based the ULB on wordings that scholars say are most likely correct. Because people who use the ULB may have access to Bibles that are based on other copies, the ULB translators included footnotes that tell about some of the differences between them.

Translators are encouraged to translate the text in the ULB and to write about added sentences in footnotes, as is done in the ULB. However, if the local church really wants those sentences to be included in the main text, translators may put them in the text and include a footnote about them.

Examples from the Bible

Matthew 18:10-11 ULB has a footnote about verse 11.

¹⁰See that you do not despise any of these little ones. For I say to you that in heaven their angels always look on the face of my Father who is in heaven. ¹¹[¹]

[¹] Many authorities, some ancient, insert v. 11. *For the Son of Man came to save that which was lost.*

John 7:53-8:11 is not in the best earliest manuscripts. It has been included in the ULB, but it is marked off with square brackets ([]) at the beginning and end, and there is a footnote after verse 11.

⁵³[Then every man went to his own house.... ¹¹She said, “No one, Lord.” Jesus said, “Neither do I condemn you. Go your way; from now on sin no more.”]^[2]

^[2]The best earliest manuscripts do not have John 7:35-8:11

Translation Strategies

When there is a textual variant, you may choose to follow the ULB or another version that you have access to.

1. Translate the verses that the ULB does and include the footnote that the ULB provides.
2. Translate the verses as another version does, and change the footnote so that it fits this situation.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

The translation strategies are applied to Mark 7:15-16 ULB, which has a footnote about verse 16.

- ¹⁴He called the crowd again and said to them, “Listen to me, all of you, and understand. ¹⁵There is nothing from outside of a person that can defile him when it enters into him. It is what comes out of the person that defiles him.” ¹⁶[¹

- ^[1]Many ancient authorities insert v. 16. *If any man has ears to hear, let him hear.*

1. Translate the verses that the ULB does and include the footnote that the ULB provides.

- ¹⁴He called the crowd again and said to them, “Listen to me, all of you, and understand. ¹⁵There is nothing from outside of a person that can defile him when it enters into him. It is what comes out of the person that defiles him.” ¹⁶[¹

- ^[1]Many ancient authorities insert verse 16. *If any man has ears to hear, let him hear.*

2. Translate the verses as another version does, and change the footnote so that it fits this situation.

- ¹⁴He called the crowd again and said to them, “Listen to me, all of you, and understand. ¹⁵There is nothing from outside of a person that can defile him when it enters into him. It is what comes out of the person that defiles him. ¹⁶If any man has ears to hear, let him hear.” ^[1]

- ^[1]Some ancient authorities do not have verse 16.

Next we recommend you learn about:

- *Chapter and Verse Numbers*

- *Original Manuscripts*
- *Terms to Know*
- *The Original and Source Languages*

Translate Unknowns

This answers the question: How can I translate ideas that my readers are not familiar with?

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

- *Sentences*

How do I translate words like lion, fig tree, mountain, priest, or temple when people in my culture have never seen these things and we do not have a word for them?

Description

Unknowns are things that occur in the source text that are not known to the people of your culture. The translationWords pages and the translationNotes will help you understand what they are. After you understand them, you will need to find ways to refer to those things so that people who read your translation will understand what they are.

We have here only five loaves of *bread* and two fish (Matthew 14:17 ULB)

Bread is a particular food made by mixing finely crushed grains with oil, and then cooking the mixture so that it is dry. (Grains are the seeds of a kind of grass.) In some cultures people do not have bread or know what it is.

Reason this is a translation issue

- Readers may not know some of the things that are in the Bible because those things are not part of their own culture.
- Readers may have difficulty understanding a text if they do not know some of the things that are mentioned in it.

Translation Principles

- Use words that are already part of your language if possible.
- Keep expressions short if possible.
- Represent God's commands and historical facts accurately.

Examples from the Bible

I will turn Jerusalem into piles of ruins, a hideout for *jackals* (Jeremiah 9:11 ULB)

Jackals are wild animals like dogs that live in only a few parts of the world. So they are not known in many places.

Beware of false prophets, those who come to you in sheep's clothing, but are truly ravenous *wolves*. (Matthew 7:15 ULB)

If wolves do not live where the translation will be read, the readers may not understand that they are fierce, wild animals like dogs that attack and eat sheep.

Then they tried to give Jesus wine that was mixed with *myrrh*. But he refused to drink it. (Mark 15:23 ULB)

People may not know what *myrrh* is and that it was used as a medicine.

to him who made *great lights* (Psalm 136:7ULB)

Some languages have terms for things that give light, like the sun and fire, but they have no general term for lights.

your sins ... will be white like *snow* (Isaiah 1:18 ULB)

People in many parts of the world have not seen snow, but they may have seen it in pictures.

Translation Strategies

Here are ways you might translate a term that is not known in your language:

1. Use a phrase that describes the part of the meaning that is important in the particular verse being translated.
2. Substitute something similar from your language if doing so does not falsely represent a historical fact.
3. Copy the word from another language, and add a general word or descriptive phrase to help people understand it.
4. Use a word that is more general in meaning.
5. Use a word or phrase that is more specific in meaning.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1. Use a phrase that describes the part of the meaning that is important in the particular verse being translated.

- **Beware of false prophets, those who come to you in sheep's clothing, but are truly ravenous wolves.** (Matthew 7:15 ULB)
 - "Beware of false prophets, those who come to you in sheep's clothing, but *are truly hungry and dangerous animals.*"
- **We have here only five loaves of bread and two fish** (Matthew 14:17 ULB)
 - "We have here only five *loaves of baked grain seeds* and two fish"

2. Substitute something similar from your language if doing so does not falsely represent a historical fact.

- **your sins ... will be white like *snow*** (Isaiah 1:18 ULB) This verse is not about snow. It uses snow in a figure of speech to help people understand how white something will be.
 - "your sins ... will be white like *milk*"
 - "your sins ... will be white like *the moon*"

3. Copy the word from another language, and add a general word or descriptive phrase to help people understand it.

- **Then they tried to give Jesus wine that was mixed with *myrrh*. But he refused to drink it.** (Mark 15:23 ULB) - People may understand better what myrrh is if it is used with the general word "medicine."
 - "Then they tried to give Jesus wine that was mixed with *a medicine called myrrh*. But he refused to drink it."
- **We have here only five loaves of *bread* and two fish** (Matthew 14:17 ULB) - People may understand better what bread is if it is used with a phrase that tells what it is made of (seeds) and how it is prepared (crushed and baked).
 - "We have here only five loaves of *baked crushed seed bread* and two fish"

4. Use a word that is more general in meaning.

- **I will turn Jerusalem into piles of ruins, a hideout for *jackals*** (Jeremiah 9:11 ULB)
 - "I will turn Jerusalem into piles of ruins, a hideout for *wild dogs*"
- **We have here only five loaves of *bread* and two fish** (Matthew 14:17 ULB)
 - "We have here only five *loaves of baked food* and two fish"

5. Use a word or phrase that is more specific in meaning.

- **to him who made *great lights*** (Psalm 136:7 ULB)
 - "to him who made *the sun and the moon*"

Next we recommend you learn about:

- *Copy or Borrow Words*
- *How to Translate Names*

Poetry

This answers the question: What is poetry and how do I translate it into my language?

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

- *Figures of Speech*
- *Writing Styles*

Poetry combines figures of speech with pleasant sounds and deep feelings to make a passage both beautiful and easier to remember.

Description

Poetry is one of various way in which to use words to make the writing more beautiful and to show the feeling. It is used to express a stronger emotional feeling than simple non-poetic forms would express. Poetry is easier to remember and tends to last longer than ordinary speech.

Some things commonly found in poetry

- Many figures of speech such as **Metaphor**, **Simile**, **Metonymy**, **Personification**, and **Apostrophe**.
- Parallel lines (See: **Parallelism** and **Parallelism with the Same Meaning**)
- Repetition of some or all of a line
 - **Praise him, all his angels; praise him, all his angel armies. Praise him, sun and moon; praise him, all you shining stars.** (Psalm 148:2-3 ULB)
- Lines of similar length.
 - **Love is patient and kind; love does not envy or boast; it is not arrogant or rude.** (1 Corinthians 13:4 ULB)
- The same sound used at the end or at the beginning of two or more lines
 - "Twinkle, twinkle little *star*. How I wonder what you *are*." (from an English rhyme)
- The same sound repeated many times
 - "Peter, Peter, pumpkin eater" (from an English rhyme)
- Old words and expressions

Some places to look for poetry in your language

1. Songs, particularly old songs or songs used in children's games
2. Religious ceremony or chants of priests or witch doctors
3. Prayers, blessings, and curses
4. Old legends

Elegant or fancy speech

Elegant or fancy speech is similar to poetry in that it uses beautiful language, but it does not use all of the language's features of poetry, and it does not use them as much as poetry does. Popular speakers in the language often use elegant speech, and this is the probably the easiest source of text to study to find out what makes speech elegant in your language.

Reasons this is a translation issue:

- Different languages use poetry for different things. If a poetic form would not communicate the same meaning in your language you may need to write it without the poetry.
- In some languages, using poetry for a particular part of the Bible would make it much more powerful.

Examples from the Bible

The Bible uses poetry for songs, teaching and prophecy. Almost all of the books of the Old Testament have poetry in them and many of the books are completely poetry.

for you saw my affliction;
you knew the distress of my soul. (Psalm 31:7 ULB)

This example of **Parallelism with the Same Meaning** has two lines that mean the same thing.

Yahweh, judge the nations;
vindicate me, Yahweh, because I am righteous and innocent, Most High.

This example of parallelism shows the contrast between what David wants God to do to him and what he wants God to do to the unrighteous nations. (See: **Parallelism**)

Keep your servant also from arrogant sins;
let them not rule over me. (Psalm 19:13 ULB)

This example of personification speaks of sins as if they could rule over a person. (See: **Personification**)

Oh, give thanks to Yahweh; for he is good, for his covenant faithfulness endures forever.
Oh, give thanks to the God of gods, for his covenant faithfulness endures forever.
Oh, give thanks to the Lord of lords, for his covenant faithfulness endures forever.
(Psalm 136:1-3 ULB)

This example repeats the phrases “give thanks” and “his covenant faithfulness endures forever.”

Translation Strategies

If the style of poetry that is used in the source text would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using it. If not, here are some other ways of translating it.

1. Translate the poetry using one of your styles of poetry.
2. Translate the poetry using your style of elegant speech.
3. Translate the poetry using your style of ordinary speech.

If you use poetry it may be more beautiful.

If you use ordinary speech it may be more clear.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

**Blessed is the man who does not walk in the advice of the wicked,
or stand in the pathway with sinners,
or sit in the assembly of mockers.
But his delight is in the law of Yahweh,
and on his law he meditates day and night.** (Psalm 1:1,2 ULB)

The following are examples of how people might translate Psalm 1:1,2.

1. Translate the poetry using one of your styles of poetry.
(The style in this example has words that sound similar at the end of each line.)

”Happy is the person not encouraged *to sin*
Disrespect for God he will not *begin*
To those who laugh at God, he is *no kin*.
God is his constant *delight*
He does what God says *is right*
He thinks of it all day *and night*”

2. Translate the poetry using your style of elegant speech.

- “This is the kind of person who is truly blessed: the one who does not follow the advice of wicked people, or stop along the road to speak with sinners, or join the gathering of those who mock God. Rather he takes great joy in Yahweh’s law, and he meditates on it day and night.”

3. Translate the poetry using your style of ordinary speech.

- “The people who do not listen to the advice of bad people are really happy. They do not spend time with people who continually do evil things or with those who do not respect God. They love to obey Yahweh’s law, and they think about it all the time.”

Next we recommend you learn about:

- *Symbolic Language*